

UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
Washington, D.C. 20549

AMENDMENT NO. 2
TO
FORM S-1
REGISTRATION STATEMENT
UNDER
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware
(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation
or organization)

6770
(Primary Standard Industrial Classification
Code Number)

82-1659427
(I.R.S. Employer
Identification Number)

**c/o Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc.
110 North 5th Street, Suite 410
Minneapolis, Minnesota 55403
(952) 426-1241**

(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

**Ken DeCubellis, Chief Executive Officer
Black Ridge Acquisition Corp.
c/o Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc.
110 North 5th Street, Suite 410
Minneapolis, Minnesota 55403
(952) 426-1241**

(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

Copies to:

**David Alan Miller, Esq.
Jeffrey M. Gallant, Esq.
Graubard Miller
The Chrysler Building
405 Lexington Avenue
New York, New York 10174
Telephone: (212) 818-8800
Facsimile: (212) 818-8881**

**Alan I. Annex, Esq.
Jason T. Simon, Esq.
Greenberg Traurig, LLP
Met Life Building
200 Park Avenue
New York, NY 10166
Telephone: (212) 801-9200
Facsimile: (212) 801-6400**

Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public: As soon as practicable after the effective date of this registration statement.

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933 check the following box.

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(d) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer
 Non-accelerated filer
 (Do not check if a smaller reporting company)

Accelerated filer
 Smaller reporting company
 Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act.

CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE

Title of each Class of Security being registered	Amount being Registered	Proposed Maximum Offering Price Per Security⁽¹⁾	Proposed Maximum Aggregate Offering Price⁽¹⁾	Amount of Registration Fee
Units, each consisting of one share of Common Stock, \$.0001 par value, one Right and one Warrant ⁽²⁾	11,500,000 Units	\$ 10.00	\$ 115,000,000	\$ 13,328.50
Shares of Common Stock included as part of the Units ⁽²⁾	11,500,000 Shares	—	—	— ⁽³⁾
Rights included as part of the Units ⁽²⁾	11,500,000 Rights	—	—	— ⁽³⁾
Warrants included as part of the Units ⁽²⁾	11,500,000 Warrants	—	—	— ⁽³⁾
Shares of common stock underlying rights included as part of the Units	1,150,000	—	—	— ⁽³⁾
Units underlying Representative's Unit Purchase Option ("Representative's Units")	500,000 Units	\$ 11.50	\$ 5,750,000	\$ 666.43
Shares of Common Stock included as part of the Representative's Units	500,000 Shares	—	—	— ⁽³⁾
Rights included as part of the Representative's Units ⁽²⁾	500,000 Rights	—	—	— ⁽³⁾
Warrants included as part of the Representative's Units ⁽²⁾	500,000 Warrants	—	—	— ⁽³⁾
Shares of common stock underlying rights included as part of the Representative's Units	50,000	—	—	— ⁽³⁾
Total			\$ 120,750,000	\$ 13,994.93⁽⁴⁾

(1) Estimated solely for the purpose of calculating the registration fee.

(2) Includes 1,500,000 Units, 1,500,000 shares of Common Stock, 1,500,000 Rights and 1,500,000 Warrants underlying such Units which may be issued on exercise of a 45-day option granted to the Underwriters to cover over-allotments, if any.

(3) No fee pursuant to Rule 457(g).

(4) Previously paid.

The registrant hereby amends this registration statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this registration statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 or until the registration statement shall become effective on such date as the Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.

The information in this preliminary prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.

SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED SEPTEMBER 27, 2017

PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUS

\$100,000,000

Black Ridge Acquisition Corp.

10,000,000 Units

Black Ridge Acquisition Corp. is a blank check company formed for the purpose of entering into a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, recapitalization, reorganization or other similar business combination with one or more businesses or entities, which we refer to as a “target business.” Our efforts to identify a prospective target business will not be limited to a particular industry or geographic region although we intend to focus our search for target businesses in the energy or energy-related industries. We do not have any specific business combination under consideration and we have not (nor has anyone on our behalf), directly or indirectly, contacted any prospective target business or had any substantive discussions, formal or otherwise, with respect to such a transaction. If we are unable to consummate an initial business combination within 21 months from the closing of this offering, we will redeem 100% of the public shares for a pro rata portion of the trust account, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account including interest earned on the funds held in the trust account and not previously released to us, divided by the number of then outstanding public shares, subject to applicable law and as further described herein.

This is an initial public offering of our securities. Each unit that we are offering has a price of \$10.00 and consists of one share of common stock, one right and one warrant. Each right entitles the holder thereof to receive one-tenth (1/10) of one share of common stock upon the consummation of an initial business combination, as described in more detail in this prospectus. Each warrant entitles the holder to purchase one share of common stock at a price of \$11.50. Each warrant will become exercisable on the later of 30 days after the completion of an initial business combination or 12 months from the closing of this offering and will expire on the fifth anniversary of our completion of an initial business combination, or earlier upon redemption or liquidation. We have granted the underwriters a 45-day option to purchase up to an additional 1,500,000 units to cover over-allotments, if any.

Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc. (OTCQB: ANFC), which we refer to throughout this prospectus as our “sponsor,” has committed to purchase from us an aggregate of 350,000 units, or “private units,” at \$10.00 per unit (for a total purchase price of \$3,500,000) in a private placement that will occur simultaneously with the consummation of this offering. Our sponsor has also agreed that if the over-allotment option is exercised by the underwriters in full or in part, it will purchase from us additional private units (up to a maximum of 37,500 private units) at a price of \$10.00 per private unit in an amount that is necessary to maintain in the trust account \$10.05 per unit sold to the public in this offering. These additional private units will be purchased in a private placement that will occur simultaneously with the purchase of units resulting from the exercise of the over-allotment option. The private units are identical to the units sold in this offering, subject to certain limited exceptions as described in this prospectus.

There is presently no public market for our units, shares of common stock or warrants. We have applied to have our units listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market, or Nasdaq, under the symbol “BRACU” on or promptly after the date of this prospectus. The common stock, rights and warrants comprising the units will begin separate trading on the 90th day following the date of this prospectus unless EarlyBirdCapital, Inc. informs us of its decision to allow earlier separate trading, subject to our filing a Current Report on Form 8-K with the SEC containing an audited balance sheet reflecting our receipt of the gross proceeds of this offering and issuing a press release announcing when such separate trading will begin. Once the securities comprising the units begin separate trading, the common stock, rights and warrants will be traded on Nasdaq under the symbols “BRAC,” “BRACR” and “BRACW,” respectively.

We are an “emerging growth company” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act and will therefore be subject to reduced public company reporting requirements.

Investing in our securities involves a high degree of risk. See “Risk Factors” beginning on page 14 of this prospectus for a discussion of information that should be considered in connection with an investment in our securities.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

	Per Unit	Total
Public Offering Price	\$ 10.00	\$ 100,000,000
Underwriting Discount ⁽¹⁾	\$ 0.20	\$ 2,000,000
Proceeds to Black Ridge Acquisition Corp. (before expenses)	\$ 9.80	\$ 98,000,000

⁽¹⁾ The underwriters will receive compensation in addition to the underwriting discount. See “Underwriting.”

Upon consummation of the offering, an aggregate of \$100,500,000 (or \$115,575,000 if the over-allotment option is exercised in full) or \$10.05 per unit sold to the public in this offering will be deposited into a U.S.-based trust account at Morgan Stanley maintained by Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, acting as trustee. Except as described in this prospectus, these funds will not be released to us until the earlier of the completion of a business combination and our redemption of our public shares (which may not occur until _____, 2019).

The underwriters are offering the units on a firm commitment basis. The underwriters expect to deliver the units to purchasers on or about _____, 2017.

Sole Book-Running Manager

EarlyBirdCapital, Inc.

Chardan

, 2017

I-Bankers Securities Inc.

You should rely only on the information contained in this prospectus. We have not, and the underwriters have not, authorized anyone to provide you with different information. We are not, and the underwriters are not, making an offer of these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer is not permitted.

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
Prospectus Summary	1
Summary Financial Data	13
Risk Factors	14
Cautionary Note Regarding Forward Looking Statements	28
Use of Proceeds	29
Dividend Policy	32
Dilution	33
Capitalization	35
Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations	36
Proposed Business	39
Management	53
Principal Stockholders	60
Certain Transactions	62
Description of Securities	64
Shares Eligible for Future Sale	69
Material U.S. Federal Tax Considerations	71
Underwriting	77
Legal Matters	85
Experts	85
Where You Can Find Additional Information	85
Index to Financial Statements	F-1

PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

This summary only highlights the more detailed information appearing elsewhere in this prospectus. As this is a summary, it does not contain all of the information that you should consider in making an investment decision. You should read this entire prospectus carefully, including the information under "Risk Factors" and our financial statements and the related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus, before investing. References in this prospectus to "we," "us" or "our company" refer to Black Ridge Acquisition Corp. References in this prospectus to our "public shares" are to shares of our common stock sold as part of the units in this offering (whether they are purchased in this offering or thereafter in the open market) and references to "public stockholders" refer to the holders of our public shares, including our sponsor (as defined below), officers and directors to the extent they purchase public shares, provided that their status as "public stockholders" shall only exist with respect to such public shares. References in this prospectus to our "management" or our "management team" refer to our officers and directors and references to our "sponsor" refer to Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc., a company affiliated with our executive officers. Unless we tell you otherwise, the information in this prospectus assumes that the underwriters will not exercise their over-allotment option.

General

We are a blank check company formed under the laws of the State of Delaware on May 9, 2017. We were formed for the purpose of entering into a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, recapitalization, reorganization or other similar business combination with one or more businesses or entities, which we refer to as a "target business." To date, our efforts have been limited to organizational activities as well as activities related to this offering. None of our officers, directors, promoters and other affiliates has engaged in any substantive discussions on our behalf with representatives of other companies regarding the possibility of a potential merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition or other similar business combination with us.

We intend to focus our search on businesses in the energy or energy-related industries with an emphasis on opportunities in the upstream oil and gas industry in North America where our management team's networks and experience are suited although our efforts to identify a prospective target business will not be limited to a particular industry or geographic region. Although we anticipate acquiring a target business that is an operating business, we are not obligated to do so and may determine to merge with or acquire a company with no operating history if the terms of the transaction are determined by us to be favorable to our public stockholders and the target business has a fair market value of at least 80% of the assets held in the trust account (excluding taxes payable on the income earned on the trust account) at the time of the agreement to enter into the initial business combination.

We intend to identify and acquire a business that could benefit from a hands-on owner with extensive experience in the upstream oil and gas industry in North America and that presents potential for an attractive risk-adjusted return profile under our stewardship. Even fundamentally sound companies can often under-perform their potential due to underinvestment, a temporary period of dislocation in the markets in which they operate, over-levered capital structures, excessive cost structures, incomplete management teams and/or inappropriate business strategies. Our management team has extensive experience in identifying and executing such full-potential acquisitions across the energy industries. In addition, our team has significant hands-on experience working with private companies in preparing for and executing an initial public offering and serving as active owners and directors by working closely with these companies to continue their transformations and help create value in the public markets.

We believe that our management team is well positioned to identify attractive risk-adjusted returns in the marketplace and that its contacts and transaction sources, ranging from industry executives, private owners, private equity funds, and investment bankers will enable us to pursue a broad range of opportunities. Our management believes that its ability to identify and implement value creation initiatives will remain central to its differentiated acquisition strategy.

We will seek to capitalize on the significant operating and investing experience and contacts of our officers and directors in consummating an initial business combination. Kenneth DeCubellis, our chairman of the board and chief executive officer, has over 30 years of experience, primarily in the oil and gas and other energy-related industries, including 10 years at Exxon Mobil Corp. Mr. DeCubellis has served as chief executive officer of our sponsor, Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc., since November 2011. Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc. is an oil and gas company that pursues distressed asset acquisitions in all unconventional, onshore U.S. oil and gas basins, including over \$100 million previously invested in the Williston Basin in North Dakota and Montana. Our management team has significant access to both publicly available and proprietary business combination opportunities and have collectively bid on over \$2.4 billion of opportunities since June 2015.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, the past performance of our sponsor, officers and directors is not a guarantee that we will be able to identify a suitable candidate for our initial business combination or of success with respect to any business combination we may consummate. You should not rely on the historical record of our management's performance as indicative of our future performance. None of our officers or directors have had experience with blank check companies or special purpose acquisition companies in the past.

Acquisition Criteria

We have identified the following general criteria and guidelines that we believe are important in evaluating prospective targets. We will use these criteria and guidelines in evaluating acquisition opportunities, but we may decide to enter into our initial business combination with a target that does not meet these criteria and guidelines. We intend to acquire target businesses that we believe:

- are fundamentally sound but that we believe can achieve better results by leveraging the operating and financial experience of our sponsor and management team;
- can utilize the extensive networks and insights that our management team has built in the energy industry;
- are at an inflection point, such as requiring additional management expertise, are able to innovate through new operational techniques, or where we believe we can drive improved financial performance;
- exhibit unrecognized value or other characteristics, desirable returns on capital, and a need for capital to achieve the company's growth strategy, that we believe have been misvalued by the marketplace based on our analysis and due diligence review; and
- will offer an attractive risk-adjusted return for our stockholders.

We will seek to acquire the target on terms and in a manner that leverages our management team's experience investing within the energy industry. Potential upside from growth in the target business and an improved capital structure will be weighed against any identified downside risks.

These criteria are not intended to be exhaustive. Any evaluation relating to the merits of a particular initial business combination may be based, to the extent relevant, on these general guidelines as well as other considerations, factors and criteria that our management may deem relevant. In the event that we decide to enter into our initial business combination with a target business that does not meet the above criteria and guidelines, we will disclose that the target business does not meet the above criteria in our stockholder communications related to our initial business combination, which, as discussed in this prospectus, would be in the form of proxy solicitation or tender offer materials that we would file with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC.

Effecting a Business Combination

We will either (1) seek stockholder approval of our initial business combination at a meeting called for such purpose at which stockholders may seek to convert their shares, regardless of whether they vote for or against the proposed business combination, into their pro rata share of the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account (net of taxes payable), or (2) provide our stockholders with the opportunity to sell their shares to us by means of a tender offer (and thereby avoid the need for a stockholder vote) for an amount equal to their pro rata share of the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account (net of taxes payable), in each case subject to the limitations described herein. The decision as to whether we will seek stockholder approval of our proposed business combination or allow stockholders to sell their shares to us in a tender offer will be made by us, solely in our discretion, and will be based on a variety of factors such as the timing of the transaction and whether the terms of the transaction would otherwise require us to seek stockholder approval. Unlike other blank check companies which require stockholder votes and conduct proxy solicitations in conjunction with their initial business combinations and related conversions of public shares for cash upon consummation of such initial business combinations even when a vote is not required by law, we will have the flexibility to avoid such stockholder vote and allow our stockholders to sell their shares pursuant to the tender offer rules of the SEC. In that case, we will file tender offer documents with the SEC which will contain substantially the same financial and other information about the initial business combination as is required under the SEC's proxy rules. We will consummate our initial business combination only if we have net tangible assets of at least \$5,000,001 upon such consummation and, if we seek stockholder approval, a majority of the outstanding shares of common stock voted are voted in favor of the business combination.

We will have until 21 months from the closing of this offering to consummate an initial business combination. If we are unable to consummate an initial business combination within such time period, we will redeem 100% of our outstanding public shares for a pro rata portion of the funds held in the trust account, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account including interest earned on the funds held in the trust account and not previously released to us, divided by the number of then outstanding public shares, subject to applicable law and as further described herein, and then seek to dissolve and liquidate. We expect the pro rata redemption price to be approximately \$10.05 per share of common stock (regardless of whether or not the underwriters exercise their over-allotment option), without taking into account any interest earned on such funds. However, we cannot assure you that we will in fact be able to distribute such amounts as a result of claims of creditors which may take priority over the claims of our public stockholders.

Our initial business combination must occur with one or more target businesses that together have a fair market value of at least 80% of the assets held in the trust account (excluding taxes payable on the income earned on the trust account) at the time of the agreement to enter into the initial business combination. The fair market value of the target or targets will be determined by our board of directors based upon one or more standards generally accepted by the financial community (such as actual and potential sales, earnings, cash flow and/or book value). Even though our board of directors will rely on generally accepted standards, our board of directors will have discretion to select the standards employed. In addition, the application of the standards generally involves a substantial degree of judgment. Accordingly, investors will be relying on the business judgment of the board of directors in evaluating the fair market value of the target or targets. The proxy solicitation materials or tender offer documents used by us in connection with any proposed transaction will provide public stockholders with our analysis of the fair market value of the target business, as well as the basis for our determinations. If our board is not able independently to determine the fair market value of the target business or businesses, we will obtain an opinion from an independent investment banking firm, or another independent entity that commonly renders valuation opinions on the type of target business we are seeking to acquire, with respect to the satisfaction of such criteria.

We currently anticipate structuring a business combination to acquire 100% of the equity interests or assets of the target business or businesses. We may, however, structure our initial business combination where we merge directly with the target business or where we acquire less than 100% of such interests or assets of the target business in order to meet certain objectives of the target management team or shareholders or for other reasons, but we will only complete such business combination if the post-transaction company owns or acquires 50% or more of the outstanding voting securities of the target or otherwise acquires a controlling interest in the target sufficient for it not to be required to register as an investment company under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, or the Investment Company Act. Even if the post-transaction company owns or acquires 50% or more of the voting securities of the target, our stockholders prior to the business combination may collectively own a minority interest in the post-transaction company, depending on valuations ascribed to the target and us in the business combination transaction. For example, we could pursue a transaction in which we issue a substantial number of new shares in exchange for all of the outstanding capital stock of a target. In this case, we could acquire a 100% controlling interest in the target; however, as a result of the issuance of a substantial number of new shares, our stockholders immediately prior to our initial business combination could own less than a majority of our outstanding shares subsequent to our initial business combination. If less than 100% of the equity interests or assets of a target business or businesses are owned or acquired by the post-transaction company, the portion of such business or businesses that is owned or acquired is what will be valued for purposes of the 80% fair market value test.

Potential Conflicts

Each of our officers and directors is an officer and/or director of our sponsor. As described above, our sponsor is an oil and gas company that pursues distressed asset acquisitions in the energy industry, the same industry within which we intend to focus our search for a target business. Our sponsor recently completed a rights offering in which it raised an aggregate of approximately \$5,182,000. Of this amount, up to \$3,875,000 (assuming the underwriters' over-allotment option is exercised in full) would be used to purchase the private units with the balance being available to our sponsor for working capital purposes, including potential investments and acquisitions. However, our sponsor intends to acquire assets from businesses with private equity backing that are seeking to sell such assets for cash without retaining any equity interest in them, whereas we intend to acquire a target business from a seller that wishes to retain a significant equity interest in the combined company. Accordingly, our management team does not believe that there will be a meaningful conflict between our sponsor and our company in relation to consummating a business combination. Nevertheless, we cannot assure you of this fact and it is possible that a suitable business opportunity will be presented to our sponsor prior to its presentation to our company.

Additionally, if any of our officers becomes aware of a business combination opportunity that falls within the line of business of any entity to which he has pre-existing fiduciary or contractual obligations, he may be required to present such business combination opportunity to such entity prior to presenting such business combination opportunity to us. For more information on the relevant pre-existing fiduciary duties or contractual obligations of our management team, see the section titled "*Management – Conflicts of Interest.*"

JOBS Act

We are an emerging growth company as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (which we refer to herein as the JOBS Act) and will remain such for up to five years. However, if our annual gross revenue is \$1.07 billion or more, if our non-convertible debt issued within a three year period exceeds \$1 billion or the market value of our shares of common stock that are held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million on the last day of the second fiscal quarter of any given fiscal year, we would cease to be an emerging growth company as of the following fiscal year. As an emerging growth company, we have elected, under Section 107(b) of the JOBS Act, to take advantage of the extended transition period provided in Section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act, for complying with new or revised accounting standards.

Private Placements

In May 2017, our sponsor purchased an aggregate of 2,875,000 shares of our common stock, which we refer to throughout this prospectus as the “founders’ shares,” for an aggregate purchase price of \$25,000, or approximately \$0.01 per share. The founders’ shares held by our sponsor includes an aggregate of up to 375,000 shares subject to forfeiture to the extent that the underwriters’ over-allotment option is not exercised in full or in part, so that our sponsor will continue to own 20.0% of our issued and outstanding shares after this offering (not including ownership of the private units and assuming it does not purchase units in this offering).

In addition, our sponsor has committed to purchase an aggregate of 350,000 private units at a price of \$10.00 per unit (\$3.5 million in the aggregate) in a private placement that will occur simultaneously with the closing of this offering. Our sponsor has also agreed that if the over-allotment option is exercised by the underwriters in full or in part, it will purchase from us at a price of \$10.00 per private unit an additional number of private units (up to a maximum of 37,500 private units) in order to maintain in the trust account \$10.05 per unit sold to the public in this offering. These additional private units will be purchased in a private placement that will occur simultaneously with the purchase of units resulting from the exercise of the over-allotment option. The proceeds from the private placement of the private units will be added to the proceeds of this offering and placed in a U.S.-based trust account at Morgan Stanley with Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, as trustee. If we do not complete an initial business combination within 21 months from the closing of this offering, the proceeds from the sale of the private units will be included in the liquidating distribution to our public stockholders and the private units will be worthless.

Our executive offices are located at 110 North 5th Street, Suite 410, Minneapolis, Minnesota 55403, and our telephone number is (952) 426-1241.

The Offering

Securities offered	10,000,000 units, at \$10.00 per unit, each unit consisting of one share of common stock, one right and one warrant.
Listing of our securities and proposed symbols	We anticipate the units, and the shares of common stock, rights and warrants once they begin separate trading, will be listed on Nasdaq under the symbols “BRACU,” “BRAC,” “BRACR” and “BRACW,” respectively.
Trading commencement and separation of common stock and warrants	<p>The units will begin trading on or promptly after the date of this prospectus. The common stock, rights and warrants comprising the units will begin separate trading on the 90th day following the date of this prospectus unless EarlyBirdCapital, Inc. informs us of its decision to allow earlier separate trading, subject to our having filed the Current Report on Form 8-K described below and having issued a press release and filed a Current Report on Form 8-K announcing when such separate trading will begin.</p> <p>Once the shares of common stock, rights and warrants commence separate trading, holders will have the option to continue to hold units or separate their units into the component pieces. Holders will need to have their brokers contact our transfer agent in order to separate the units into shares of common stock, rights and warrants.</p> <p>In no event will the common stock, rights and warrants be traded separately until we have filed a Current Report on Form 8-K with the SEC containing an audited balance sheet reflecting our receipt of the gross proceeds at the closing of this offering. We will file the Current Report on Form 8-K promptly after the closing of this offering, which is anticipated to take place three business days from the date of this prospectus. If the underwriters’ over-allotment option is exercised following the initial filing of such Current Report on Form 8-K, a second or amended Current Report on Form 8-K will be filed to provide updated financial information to reflect the exercise of the underwriters’ over-allotment option. We will also include the Form 8-K, or amendment thereto, or in a subsequent Form 8-K, information indicating if EarlyBirdCapital, Inc. has allowed separate trading of the common stock, rights and warrants prior to the 90th day after the date of this prospectus.</p>
Units:	
Number outstanding before this offering	0 units
Number outstanding after this offering and private placement	10,350,000 units

Shares of common stock:	
Number outstanding before this offering	2,875,000 shares ⁽¹⁾
Number to be outstanding after this offering and private placement	12,850,000 shares ⁽²⁾
Rights:	
Number outstanding before this offering	0 rights
Number to be outstanding after this offering and private placement	10,350,000 rights
Warrants:	
Number outstanding before this offering	0 warrants
Number to be outstanding after this offering and private placement	10,350,000 warrants
Warrants:	
Exercisability	Each warrant is exercisable for one share of common stock. The warrants will become exercisable on the later of 30 days after the completion of an initial business combination and 12 months from the date of this prospectus. The warrants will expire at 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on the fifth anniversary of our completion of an initial business combination, or earlier upon redemption.
Exercise price	\$11.50. No warrants will be exercisable for cash unless we have an effective and current registration statement covering the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants and a current prospectus relating to such shares of common stock. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if a registration statement covering the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants is not effective within a specified period following the consummation of our initial business combination, warrant holders may, until such time as there is an effective registration statement and during any period when we shall have failed to maintain an effective registration statement, exercise warrants on a cashless basis pursuant to the exemption provided by Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act, provided that such exemption is available. If that exemption, or another exemption, is not available, holders will not be able to exercise their warrants on a cashless basis.
Redemption	We may redeem the outstanding warrants (excluding the private warrants and any warrants underlying additional units issued to our sponsor, officers or directors in payment of working capital loans made to us but including any outstanding warrants issued upon exercise of the unit purchase option issued to EarlyBirdCapital) in whole and not in part, at a price of \$0.01 per warrant at any time while the warrants are exercisable, upon a minimum of 30 days' prior written notice of redemption, if, and only if, the last sales price of our shares of common stock equals or exceeds \$18.00 per share (as adjusted for stock splits, stock dividends, reorganizations and recapitalizations) for any 20 trading days within a 30 trading day period ending three business days before we send the notice of redemption; and if, and only if, there is a current registration statement in effect with respect to the shares of common stock underlying such warrants.

- (1) This number includes an aggregate of up to 375,000 founders' shares that are subject to forfeiture if the over-allotment option is not exercised by the underwriters in full.
- (2) Assumes the over-allotment option has not been exercised and an aggregate of 375,000 founders' shares have been forfeited.

If the foregoing conditions are satisfied and we issue a notice of redemption, each warrant holder can exercise his, her or its warrant prior to the scheduled redemption date. However, the price of the shares of common stock may fall below the \$18.00 trigger price as well as the \$11.50 warrant exercise price after the redemption notice is issued.

If we call the warrants for redemption as described above, our management will have the option to require all holders that wish to exercise warrants to do so on a “cashless basis.” In such event, each holder would pay the exercise price by surrendering the warrants for that number of shares of common stock equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the product of the number of shares of common stock underlying the warrants, multiplied by the difference between the exercise price of the warrants and the “fair market value” (defined below) by (y) the fair market value. The “fair market value” shall mean the average reported last sale price of the shares of common stock for the five trading days ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which the notice of redemption is sent to the holders of warrants.

Rights:

Terms of the rights

Each holder of a right will receive one-tenth (1/10) of one share of common stock upon consummation of our initial business combination. In the event we will not be the surviving entity upon completion of our initial business combination, each holder of a right will be required to affirmatively convert its rights in order to receive the 1/10 share of common stock underlying each right (without paying any additional consideration). If we are unable to complete an initial business combination within the required time period and we redeem the public shares for the funds held in the trust account, holders of rights will not receive any such funds in exchange for their rights and the rights will expire worthless. We will not issue fractional shares upon exchange of the rights. If, upon exchange of the rights, a holder would be entitled to receive a fractional interest in a share, we will, upon exchange, either round up to the nearest whole number the number of shares to be issued to the right holder or otherwise comply with Section 155 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, as further described herein. We will make the determination of how we are treating fractional shares at the time of our initial business combination and will include such determination in the proxy materials we will send to stockholders for their consideration of such initial business combination.

Securities purchased, or being purchased,
by insiders

Our sponsor has purchased an aggregate of 2,875,000 founders' shares for an aggregate purchase price of \$25,000, or approximately \$0.01 per share. The 2,875,000 founders' shares includes an aggregate of up to 375,000 shares of common stock subject to forfeiture to the extent that the over-allotment option is not exercised by the underwriters in full or in part. Our sponsor will be required to forfeit only a number of shares of common stock necessary to continue to maintain the 20.0% ownership interest in our shares of common stock after giving effect to the offering and exercise, if any, of the underwriters' over-allotment option (excluding the private units and any units purchased in this offering). The founders' shares are identical to the shares of common stock included in the units being sold in this offering. However, our sponsor and officers and directors have agreed (A) to vote any shares owned by them in favor of any proposed business combination and (B) not to convert any shares in connection with a stockholder vote to approve a proposed initial business combination or sell any shares to us in a tender offer in connection with a proposed initial business combination.

Simultaneously with the consummation of this offering, our sponsor has committed to purchase an aggregate of 350,000 private units at \$10.00 per private unit (for a total purchase price of \$3,500,000) pursuant to a subscription agreement with us. Our sponsor has also agreed that if the over-allotment option is exercised by the underwriters in full or in part, it will purchase from us an additional number of private units (up to a maximum of 37,500 private units) at a price of \$10.00 per private unit necessary to maintain in the trust account \$10.05 per unit sold to the public in this offering. These additional private units will be purchased in a private placement that will occur simultaneously with the purchase of units resulting from the exercise of the over-allotment option. The amounts to be paid upon consummation of the private placement will be placed in escrow with our counsel prior to the consummation of this offering. The private units are identical to the units sold in this offering except that the underlying warrants, or private warrants, (i) will not be redeemable by us and (ii) may be exercised for cash or on a cashless basis, as described in this prospectus, in each case so long as they are held by our sponsor or any of its permitted transferees. If the private warrants are held by holders other than our sponsor or any of its permitted transferees, the private warrants will be redeemable by us and exercisable by the holders on the same basis as the warrants included in the units being sold in this offering. Furthermore, our sponsor has agreed (A) to vote the shares of common stock included in the private units, or “private shares,” in favor of any proposed business combination, (B) not to convert any private shares in connection with a stockholder vote to approve a proposed initial business combination or sell any private shares to us in a tender offer in connection with a proposed initial business combination and (C) that the private shares shall not participate in any liquidating distribution upon winding up if a business combination is not consummated. In the

event of a liquidation prior to our initial business combination, the private units will be worthless.

Restrictions on transfer of founders' shares and private units

On the date of this prospectus, the founders' shares will be placed into an escrow account maintained in New York, New York by Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, acting as escrow agent. Subject to certain limited exceptions, these shares will not be transferred, assigned, sold or released from escrow until (1) with respect to 50% of the founders' shares, the earlier of one year after the date of the consummation of our initial business combination and the date on which the closing price of our common stock equals or exceeds \$12.50 per share (as adjusted for share splits, share dividends, reorganizations and recapitalizations) for any 20 trading days within any 30-trading day period commencing after our initial business combination and (2) with respect to the remaining 50% of the founders' shares, one year after the date of the consummation of our initial business combination, or earlier, in either case, if, subsequent to our initial business combination, we consummate a liquidation, merger, stock exchange or other similar transaction which results in all of our stockholders having the right to exchange their shares of common stock for cash, securities or other property. The limited exceptions include transfers, assignments or sales (i) to our or our sponsor's officers, directors, consultants or their affiliates, (ii) to an entity's members upon its liquidation, (iii) to relatives and trusts for estate planning purposes, (iv) by virtue of the laws of descent and distribution upon death, (v) pursuant to a qualified domestic relations order, (vi) to us for no value for cancellation in connection with the consummation of our initial business combination, or (vii) in connection with the consummation of a business combination at prices no greater than the price at which the shares were originally purchased, in each case (except for clause (vi) or with our prior consent) where the transferee agrees to the terms of the escrow agreement and to be bound by these transfer restrictions.

Our sponsor has also agreed not to transfer, assign or sell any of the private units, including the underlying common stock, rights and warrants (except in connection with the same limited exceptions that the founders' shares may be transferred as described above), until after the completion of our initial business combination.

Offering proceeds to be held in trust

An aggregate of \$10.05 per unit sold to the public in this offering (regardless of whether or not the over-allotment option is exercised) will be placed in a U.S.-based trust account at Morgan Stanley maintained by Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, acting as trustee pursuant to an agreement to be signed on the date of this prospectus. Except as set forth below, the proceeds held in the trust account will not be released until the earlier of the completion of an initial business combination and our redemption of 100% of the outstanding public shares if we have not completed a business combination in the required time period. Therefore, unless and until an initial business combination is consummated, the proceeds held in the trust account will not be available for our use for any expenses related to this offering or expenses which we may incur related to the investigation and selection of a target business and the negotiation of an agreement to acquire a target business.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, there can be released to us from the trust account (i) any interest earned on the funds in the trust account that we need to pay our income or other tax obligations and (ii) up to \$50,000 of interest earned on the funds in the trust account that we may need to pay for our liquidation expenses if we are unable to consummate an initial business combination within the required time period. With these exceptions, expenses incurred by us may be paid prior to a business combination only from the net proceeds of this offering not held in the trust account (initially estimated to be \$500,000); provided, however, that in order to meet our working capital needs following the consummation of this offering if the funds not held in the trust account are insufficient, our sponsor, officers, directors or their affiliates may, but are not obligated to, loan us funds, from time to time or at any time, in whatever amount they deem reasonable in their sole discretion. Each loan would be evidenced by a promissory note. The notes would either be paid upon consummation of our initial business combination, without interest, or, at the holder's discretion, up to \$1,500,000 of the notes may be converted into units at a price of \$10.00 per unit. These units would be identical to the private units. Accordingly, if \$1,500,000 of notes were converted, it would result in the holders being issued 165,000 shares of common stock (as the rights included in such units would result in the issuance of an additional 15,000 shares), as well as 150,000 warrants to purchase an additional 150,000 shares. In the event that the initial business combination does not close, we may use a portion of the working capital held outside the trust account to repay such loaned amounts, but no proceeds from our trust account would be used for such repayment.

None of the warrants may be exercised until the later of 30 days after the consummation of a business combination or 12 months from the closing of this offering and, thus, after the proceeds of the trust account have been disbursed. Accordingly, the warrant exercise price will be paid directly to us and not placed in the trust account.

Limited payments to insiders

There will be no fees, reimbursements or other cash payments paid to our sponsor, officers, directors or their affiliates for any services they render prior to, or in order to effectuate the consummation of, an initial business combination (regardless of the type of transaction that it is) other than the following payments, none of which will be made from the proceeds of this offering held in the trust account prior to the completion of our initial business combination:

- repayment at the closing of this offering of an aggregate of \$125,000 of non-interest bearing loans made by our sponsor;
- payment of \$10,000 per month to our sponsor for office space and related services; and
- reimbursement of out-of-pocket expenses incurred by them in connection with certain activities on our behalf, such as identifying and investigating possible target businesses and business combinations.

There is no limit on the amount of out-of-pocket expenses reimbursable by us. Our audit committee will review and approve all reimbursements and payments made to our sponsor, officers, directors or our or their respective affiliates, with any interested director abstaining from such review and approval.

Stockholder approval of, or tender offer in connection with, initial business combination

In connection with any proposed initial business combination, we will either (1) seek stockholder approval of such initial business combination at a meeting called for such purpose at which stockholders may seek to convert their shares, regardless of whether they vote for or against the proposed business combination, into their pro rata share of the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account (net of taxes payable), or (2) provide our stockholders with the opportunity to sell their shares to us by means of a tender offer (and thereby avoid the need for a stockholder vote) for an amount equal to their pro rata share of the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account (net of taxes payable), in each case subject to the limitations described herein. If we determine to engage in a tender offer, such tender offer will be structured so that each stockholder may tender all of his, her or its shares rather than some pro rata portion of his, her or its shares. If enough stockholders tender their shares so that we are unable to satisfy any applicable closing condition set forth in the definitive agreement related to our initial business combination, or we are unable to maintain net tangible assets of at least \$5,000,001, we will not consummate such initial business combination. The decision as to whether we will seek stockholder approval of a proposed business combination or will allow stockholders to sell their shares to us in a tender offer will be made by us, solely in our discretion, and will be based on a variety of factors such as the timing of the transaction and whether the terms of the transaction would otherwise require us to seek stockholder approval. Unlike other blank check companies which require stockholder votes and conduct proxy solicitations in conjunction with their initial business combinations and related conversions of public shares for cash upon consummation of such initial business combinations even when a vote is not required by law, we will have the flexibility to avoid such stockholder vote and allow our stockholders to sell their shares pursuant to Rule 13e-4 and Regulation 14E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or Exchange Act, which regulate issuer tender offers. In that case, we will file tender offer documents with the SEC which will contain substantially the same financial and other information about the initial business combination as is required under the SEC's proxy rules. We will consummate our initial business combination only if we have net tangible assets of at least \$5,000,001 upon such consummation and, if we seek stockholder approval, a majority of the outstanding shares of common stock voted are voted in favor of the business combination.

We chose our net tangible asset threshold of \$5,000,001 to ensure that we would avoid being subject to Rule 419 promulgated under the Securities Act. However, if we seek to consummate an initial business combination with a target business that imposes any type of working capital closing condition or requires us to have a minimum amount of funds available from the trust account upon consummation of such initial business combination, we may need to have more than \$5,000,001 in net tangible assets upon consummation and this may force us to seek third party financing which may not be available on terms acceptable to us or at all. As a result, we may not be able to consummate such initial business combination and we may not be able to locate another suitable target within the applicable time period, if at all.

Our sponsor and officers and directors have agreed (i) to vote any shares owned by them in favor of any proposed business combination, (ii) not to convert any shares in connection with a stockholder vote to approve a proposed initial business combination and (iii) not to sell any shares to us in a tender offer in connection with any proposed business combination.

None of our sponsor, officers, directors or their affiliates has indicated any intention to purchase units in this offering or any units or shares of common stock from persons in the open market or in private transactions. However, if we hold a meeting to approve a proposed business combination and a significant number of stockholders vote, or indicate an intention to vote, against a proposed business combination, our sponsor, officers, directors or their affiliates could make such purchases in the open market or in private transactions in order to influence any vote held to approve a proposed initial business combination. Notwithstanding the foregoing, our officers, directors, sponsor and their affiliates will not make purchases of shares of common stock if the purchases would violate Section 9(a)(2) or Rule 10b-5 of the Exchange Act, which are rules designed to stop potential manipulation of a company's stock.

Conversion rights

In connection with any stockholder meeting called to approve a proposed initial business combination, each public stockholder will have the right, regardless of whether he is voting for or against such proposed business combination, to demand that we convert his shares into a pro rata share of the trust account.

We may require public stockholders, whether they are a record holder or hold their shares in "street name," to either (i) physically tender their certificates to our transfer agent or (ii) deliver their shares to the transfer agent electronically using Depository Trust Company's DWAC (Deposit/Withdrawal At Custodian) System, at the holder's option, in each case prior to a date set forth in the tender offer documents or proxy materials sent in connection with the proposal to approve the business combination. There is a nominal cost associated with this tendering process and the act of certificating the shares or delivering them through the DWAC system. The transfer agent will typically charge the tendering broker \$45 and it would be up to the broker whether or not to pass this cost on to the converting holder.

Liquidation if no business combination

If we are unable to complete an initial business combination by 21 months from the closing of this offering, we will (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but not more than ten business days thereafter, redeem 100% of the outstanding public shares, at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account, including any interest not previously released to us (net of taxes payable), divided by the number of then outstanding public shares, which redemption will completely extinguish public stockholders' rights as stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidation distributions, if any), subject to applicable law, and (iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of our remaining stockholders and our board of directors, dissolve and liquidate, subject (in the case of (ii) and (iii) above) to our obligations under Delaware law to provide for claims of creditors and the requirements of other applicable law. We cannot assure you that we will have funds sufficient to pay or provide for all creditors' claims. Although we are required to have all third parties (including any vendors or other entities we engage after this offering) and any prospective target businesses enter into agreements with us waiving any right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies held in the trust account, there is no guarantee that they will execute such agreements. There is also no guarantee that the third parties would not challenge the enforceability of these waivers and bring claims against the trust account for monies owed them. Our sponsor has agreed that it will be liable to ensure that the proceeds in the trust account are not reduced below \$10.05 per share by the claims of target businesses or claims of vendors or other entities that are owed money by us for services rendered or contracted for or products sold to us, but we cannot assure you that it will be able to satisfy its indemnification obligations if it is required to do so. Additionally, the agreement entered into by our sponsor specifically provides for two exceptions to the indemnity it has given: it will have no liability (1) as to any claimed amounts owed to a target business or vendor or other entity who has executed an agreement with us waiving any right, title, interest or claim of any kind they may have in or to any monies held in the trust account, or (2) as to any claims for indemnification by the underwriters of this offering against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act.

The holders of the founders' shares and private shares will not participate in any redemption distribution from our trust account with respect to such founders' shares or private shares.

If we are unable to conclude an initial business combination and we expend all of the net proceeds of this offering not deposited in the trust account, we expect that the initial per-share redemption price will be approximately \$10.05 (which is equal to the anticipated aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account excluding interest earned on the funds held in the trust account). The proceeds deposited in the trust account could, however, become subject to claims of our creditors that are in preference to the claims of our stockholders. In addition, if we are forced to file a bankruptcy case or an involuntary bankruptcy case is filed against us that is not dismissed, the proceeds held in the trust account could be subject to applicable bankruptcy law, and may be included in our bankruptcy estate and subject to the claims of third parties with priority over the claims of our stockholders. Therefore, we cannot assure you that the actual per-share redemption price will not be less than approximately \$10.05.

We will pay the costs of any subsequent liquidation from the up to \$50,000 of interest that may be released from the trust account to us to pay for our liquidation and dissolution expenses. If such interest is insufficient to pay for such expenses, our sponsor has contractually agreed to advance us the funds necessary to complete such liquidation and has contractually agreed not to seek repayment for such expenses.

Our sponsor, officers and directors have agreed that they will not propose any amendment to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation that would

affect our public stockholders' ability to convert or sell their shares to us in connection with a business combination as described herein or affect the substance or timing of our obligation to redeem 100% of our public shares if we do not complete a business combination within 21 months from the closing of this offering unless we provide our public stockholders with the opportunity to convert their shares of common stock upon the approval of any such amendment at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account, including interest not previously released to us but net of franchise and income taxes payable, divided by the number of then outstanding public shares. This redemption right shall apply in the event of the approval of any such amendment, whether proposed by our sponsor, any executive officer, director or any other person.

Risks

In making your decision on whether to invest in our securities, you should take into account the special risks we face as a blank check company, as well as the fact that this offering is not being conducted in compliance with Rule 419 promulgated under the Securities Act, and, therefore, you will not be entitled to protections normally afforded to investors in Rule 419 blank check offerings. For additional information concerning how Rule 419 blank check offerings differ from this offering, please see "*Proposed Business — Comparison to offerings of blank check companies subject to Rule 419.*" You should carefully consider these and the other risks set forth in the section entitled "*Risk Factors*" beginning on page 14 of this prospectus.

SUMMARY FINANCIAL DATA

The following table summarizes the relevant financial data for our business and should be read with our financial statements, which are included in this prospectus. We have not had any significant operations to date, and accordingly only balance sheet data is presented.

	May 31, 2017	
	Actual	As Adjusted
Balance Sheet Data:		
Working capital deficiency (1)	(37,823)	101,024,777
Total assets (2)	150,000	101,024,777
Total liabilities	125,323	–
Value of common stock subject to possible conversion/tender (3)	–	96,024,775
Stockholders' equity (4)	24,677	5,000,002

(1) The “as adjusted” calculation includes \$100,500,000 cash held in trust from the proceeds of this offering and the sale of the private units, plus \$500,000 of cash held outside the trust account, plus \$100 from the issuance of the unit purchase option, plus \$62,500 of offering costs paid in advance, less the actual working capital deficit of \$37,823 at May 31, 2017.

(2) The “as adjusted” calculation equals \$100,500,000 cash held in trust from the proceeds of this offering and the sale of the private units, plus \$500,000 in cash held outside the trust account, plus \$100 from the issuance of the unit purchase option, plus \$62,500 of offering costs paid in advance, less the actual working capital deficit of \$37,823 at May 31, 2017.

(3) The “as adjusted” calculation equals the “as adjusted” total assets, less the “as adjusted” total liabilities, less the “as adjusted” stockholders' equity, which is set to approximate the minimum net tangible assets threshold of at least \$5,000,001.

(4) Excludes 9,554,704 shares of common stock purchased in the public market which are subject to conversion in connection with our initial business combination. The “as adjusted” calculation equals the “as adjusted” total assets, less the “as adjusted” total liabilities, less the value of shares of common stock that may be converted in connection with our initial business combination (\$10.05 per share).

The “as adjusted” information gives effect to the sale of the units we are offering, including the application of the related gross proceeds and the payment of the estimated remaining costs from such sale and the repayment of the accrued and other liabilities required to be repaid.

The “as adjusted” working capital and total assets amounts include the \$100,500,000 to be held in the trust account, which, except for limited situations described in this prospectus, will be available to us only upon the consummation of a business combination within the time period described in this prospectus. If a business combination is not so consummated, the trust account, less amounts we are permitted to withdraw as described in this prospectus, will be distributed solely to our public stockholders (subject to our obligations under Delaware law to provide for claims of creditors).

We will consummate our initial business combination only if we have net tangible assets of at least \$5,000,001 upon such consummation and, solely if we seek stockholder approval, a majority of the outstanding shares of common stock voted are voted in favor of the business combination.

RISK FACTORS

An investment in our securities involves a high degree of risk. You should consider carefully the risks described below, which we believe represent the material risks related to the offering, together with the other information contained in this prospectus, before making a decision to invest in our units. This prospectus also contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated in the forward-looking statements as a result of specific factors, including the risks described below.

Risks Associated with Our Business

We are a newly formed company with no operating history and, accordingly, you will not have any basis on which to evaluate our ability to achieve our business objective.

We are a newly formed company with no operating results to date. Therefore, our ability to commence operations is dependent upon obtaining financing through the public offering of our securities. Since we do not have an operating history, you will have no basis upon which to evaluate our ability to achieve our business objective, which is to acquire an operating business. We have not conducted any substantive discussions and we have no plans, arrangements or understandings with any prospective acquisition candidates. We will not generate any revenues until, at the earliest, after the consummation of a business combination.

Our independent registered public accounting firm's report contains an explanatory paragraph that expresses substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a "going concern."

As of May 31, 2017, we had \$87,500 in cash and a working capital deficiency of \$37,823. Further, we have incurred and expect to continue to incur significant costs in pursuit of our financial and acquisition plans. Management's plans to address this need for capital through this offering are discussed in the section of this prospectus titled "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations." We cannot assure you that our plans to raise capital or to consummate an initial business combination will be successful. These factors, among others, raise substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern. The financial statements contained elsewhere in this prospectus do not include any adjustments that might result from our inability to consummate this offering or our inability to continue as a going concern.

If we are unable to consummate a business combination, our public stockholders may be forced to wait more than 21 months before receiving distributions from the trust account.

We have 21 months from the closing of this offering in which to complete a business combination. We have no obligation to return funds to investors prior to such date unless we consummate a business combination prior thereto and only then in cases where investors have sought to convert or sell their shares to us. Only after the expiration of this full time period will public security holders be entitled to distributions from the trust account if we are unable to complete a business combination. Accordingly, investors' funds may be unavailable to them until after such date and to liquidate your investment, public security holders may be forced to sell their public shares, rights or warrants, potentially at a loss.

Our public stockholders may not be afforded an opportunity to vote on our proposed business combination.

We will either (1) seek stockholder approval of our initial business combination at a meeting called for such purpose at which public stockholders may seek to convert their shares, regardless of whether they vote for or against the proposed business combination, into their pro rata share of the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account (net of taxes payable), or (2) provide our public stockholders with the opportunity to sell their shares to us by means of a tender offer (and thereby avoid the need for a stockholder vote) for an amount equal to their pro rata share of the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account (net of taxes payable), in each case subject to the limitations described elsewhere in this prospectus. Accordingly, it is possible that we will consummate our initial business combination even if holders of a majority of our public shares do not approve of the business combination we consummate. The decision as to whether we will seek stockholder approval of a proposed business combination or will allow stockholders to sell their shares to us in a tender offer will be made by us, solely in our discretion, and will be based on a variety of factors such as the timing of the transaction and whether the terms of the transaction would otherwise require us to seek stockholder approval. For instance, Nasdaq rules currently allow us to engage in a tender offer in lieu of a stockholder meeting but would still require us to obtain stockholder approval if we were seeking to issue more than 20% of our outstanding shares to a target business as consideration in any business combination. Therefore, if we were structuring a business combination that required us to issue more than 20% of our outstanding shares, we would seek stockholder approval of such business combination instead of conducting a tender offer.

You will not be entitled to protections normally afforded to investors of blank check companies.

Since the net proceeds of this offering are intended to be used to complete a business combination with a target business that has not been identified, we may be deemed to be a “blank check” company under the United States securities laws. However, since we will have net tangible assets in excess of \$5,000,000 upon the successful consummation of this offering and will file a Current Report on Form 8-K, including an audited balance sheet demonstrating this fact, we are exempt from rules promulgated by the SEC to protect investors of blank check companies such as Rule 419. Accordingly, investors will not be afforded the benefits or protections of those rules which would, for example, completely restrict the transferability of our securities, require us to complete a business combination within 18 months of the effective date of the initial registration statement and restrict the use of interest earned on the funds held in the trust account. Because we are not subject to Rule 419, our units will be immediately tradable, we will be entitled to withdraw amounts from the funds held in the trust account prior to the completion of a business combination and we will have a longer period of time to complete such a business combination than we would if we were subject to such rule.

If we determine to change our acquisition criteria or guidelines, many of the disclosures contained in this prospectus would be rendered irrelevant and you would be investing in our company without any basis on which to evaluate the potential target business we may acquire.

We could seek to deviate from the acquisition criteria or guidelines disclosed in this prospectus although we have no current intention to do so. For instance, we currently anticipate acquiring a target business that is an operating business. However, we are not obligated to do so and may determine to merge with or acquire a company with no operating history if the terms of the transaction are determined by us to be favorable to our public stockholders. In such event, many of the acquisition criteria and guidelines set forth in this prospectus would be rendered irrelevant. Accordingly, investors may be making an investment in our company without any basis on which to evaluate the potential target business we may acquire.

We may issue shares of our capital stock or debt securities to complete a business combination, which would reduce the equity interest of our stockholders and likely cause a change in control of our ownership.

As of the date of this prospectus, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation authorizes the issuance of up to 30,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$.0001 per share, and 1,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$.0001 per share. Immediately after this offering and the purchase of the private units (assuming no exercise of the underwriters’ over-allotment option), there will be 4,715,000 authorized but unissued shares of common stock available for issuance (after appropriate reservation for the issuance of the securities underlying the public and private units and the underwriters’ purchase option). Although we have no commitment as of the date of this offering, we may issue a substantial number of additional shares of common stock or shares of preferred stock, or a combination of common stock and preferred stock, to complete a business combination. The issuance of additional shares of common stock will not reduce the per-share conversion amount in the trust account. The issuance of additional shares of common stock or preferred stock:

- may significantly reduce the equity interest of investors in this offering;
- may subordinate the rights of holders of shares of common stock if we issue shares of preferred stock with rights senior to those afforded to our shares of common stock;
- may cause a change in control if a substantial number of shares of common stock are issued, which may affect, among other things, our ability to use our net operating loss carry forwards, if any, and could result in the resignation or removal of our present officers and directors; and
- may adversely affect prevailing market prices for our shares of common stock.

Similarly, if we issue debt securities, it could result in:

- default and foreclosure on our assets if our operating revenues after a business combination are insufficient to repay our debt obligations;

- acceleration of our obligations to repay the indebtedness even if we make all principal and interest payments when due if we breach certain covenants that require the maintenance of certain financial ratios or reserves without a waiver or renegotiation of that covenant;
- our immediate payment of all principal and accrued interest, if any, if the debt security is payable on demand; and
- our inability to obtain necessary additional financing if the debt security contains covenants restricting our ability to obtain such financing while the debt security is outstanding.

If we incur indebtedness, our lenders will not have a claim on the cash in the trust account and such indebtedness will not decrease the per-share conversion amount in the trust account.

If the net proceeds of this offering not being held in trust are insufficient to allow us to operate for at least the next 21 months, we may be unable to complete a business combination.

We believe that, upon consummation of this offering, the funds available to us outside of the trust account will be sufficient to allow us to operate for at least the next 21 months, assuming that a business combination is not consummated during that time. However, we cannot assure you that our estimates will be accurate. Accordingly, if we use all of the funds held outside of the trust account, we may not have sufficient funds available with which to structure, negotiate or close an initial business combination. In such event, we would need to borrow funds from our sponsor, officers or directors or their affiliates to operate or may be forced to liquidate. Our sponsor, officers, directors and their affiliates may, but are not obligated to, loan us funds, from time to time or at any time, in whatever amount that they deem reasonable in their sole discretion for our working capital needs. Each loan would be evidenced by a promissory note. The notes would either be paid upon consummation of our initial business combination, without interest, or, at holder's discretion, up to \$1,500,000 of the notes may be converted into warrants at a price of \$10.00 per private unit.

If third parties bring claims against us, the proceeds held in trust could be reduced and the per-share redemption price received by stockholders may be less than \$10.05.

Our placing of funds in trust may not protect those funds from third party claims against us. Although we will seek to have all vendors and service providers we engage and prospective target businesses we negotiate with execute agreements with us waiving any right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies held in the trust account for the benefit of our public stockholders, they may not execute such agreements. Furthermore, even if such entities execute such agreements with us, they may seek recourse against the trust account. A court may not uphold the validity of such agreements. Accordingly, the proceeds held in trust could be subject to claims which could take priority over those of our public stockholders. If we are unable to complete a business combination and distribute the proceeds held in trust to our public stockholders, our sponsor has agreed (subject to certain exceptions described elsewhere in this prospectus) that it will be liable to ensure that the proceeds in the trust account are not reduced below \$10.05 per share by the claims of target businesses or claims of vendors or other entities that are owed money by us for services rendered or contracted for or products sold to us. However, it may not be able to meet such obligation. Therefore, the per-share distribution from the trust account may be less than \$10.05, plus interest, due to such claims.

Additionally, if we are forced to file a bankruptcy case or an involuntary bankruptcy case is filed against us which is not dismissed, the proceeds held in the trust account could be subject to applicable bankruptcy law, and may be included in our bankruptcy estate and subject to the claims of third parties with priority over the claims of our stockholders. To the extent any bankruptcy claims deplete the trust account, we may not be able to return to our public stockholders at least \$10.05.

Our stockholders may be held liable for claims by third parties against us to the extent of distributions received by them.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides that we will continue in existence only until 21 months from the closing of this offering. If we have not completed a business combination by such date, we will (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but not more than ten business days thereafter, redeem 100% of the outstanding public shares, at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account, including any interest not previously released to us but net of franchise and income taxes payable, divided by the number of then outstanding public shares, which redemption will completely extinguish public stockholders' rights as stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidation distributions, if any), subject to applicable law, and (iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of our remaining stockholders and our board of directors, dissolve and liquidate, subject (in the case of (ii) and (iii) above) to our obligations under Delaware law to provide for claims of creditors and the requirements of other applicable law. We cannot assure you that we will properly assess all claims that may be potentially brought against us. As such, our stockholders could potentially be liable for any claims to the extent of distributions received by them (but no more) and any liability of our stockholders may extend well beyond the third anniversary of the date of distribution. Accordingly, we cannot assure you that third parties will not seek to recover from our stockholders amounts owed to them by us.

If we are forced to file a bankruptcy case or an involuntary bankruptcy case is filed against us which is not dismissed, any distributions received by stockholders could be viewed under applicable debtor/creditor and/or bankruptcy laws as either a “preferential transfer” or a “fraudulent conveyance.” As a result, a bankruptcy court could seek to recover all amounts received by our stockholders. Furthermore, because we intend to distribute the proceeds held in the trust account to our public stockholders promptly after expiration of the time we have to complete an initial business combination, this may be viewed or interpreted as giving preference to our public stockholders over any potential creditors with respect to access to or distributions from our assets. Furthermore, our board may be viewed as having breached their fiduciary duties to our creditors and/or may have acted in bad faith, and thereby exposing itself and our company to claims of punitive damages, by paying public stockholders from the trust account prior to addressing the claims of creditors. We cannot assure you that claims will not be brought against us for these reasons.

Our directors may decide not to enforce our sponsor’s indemnification obligations, resulting in a reduction in the amount of funds in the trust account available for distribution to our public stockholders.

In the event that the proceeds in the trust account are reduced below \$10.05 per public share and our sponsor asserts that it is unable to satisfy its obligations or that it has no indemnification obligations related to a particular claim, our independent directors would determine whether to take legal action against our sponsor to enforce such indemnification obligations. It is possible that our independent directors in exercising their business judgment may choose not to do so in any particular instance. If our independent directors choose not to enforce these indemnification obligations, the amount of funds in the trust account available for distribution to our public stockholders may be reduced below \$10.05 per share.

If we do not file and maintain a current and effective prospectus relating to the common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants, holders will only be able to exercise such warrants on a “cashless basis.”

If we do not file and maintain a current and effective prospectus relating to the common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants at the time that holders wish to exercise such warrants, they will only be able to exercise them on a “cashless basis” provided that an exemption from registration is available. As a result, the number of shares of common stock that holders will receive upon exercise of the warrants will be fewer than it would have been had such holder exercised his warrant for cash. Further, if an exemption from registration is not available, holders would not be able to exercise on a cashless basis and would only be able to exercise their warrants for cash if a current and effective prospectus relating to the common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants is available. Under the terms of the warrant agreement, we have agreed to use our best efforts to meet these conditions and to file and maintain a current and effective prospectus relating to the common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants until the expiration of the warrants. However, we cannot assure you that we will be able to do so. If we are unable to do so, the potential “upside” of the holder’s investment in our company may be reduced or the warrants may expire worthless.

An investor will only be able to exercise a warrant if the issuance of shares of common stock upon such exercise has been registered or qualified or is deemed exempt under the securities laws of the state of residence of the holder of the warrants.

No warrants will be exercisable and we will not be obligated to issue shares of common stock unless the shares of common stock issuable upon such exercise has been registered or qualified or deemed to be exempt under the securities laws of the state of residence of the holder of the warrants. If the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants are not qualified or exempt from qualification in the jurisdictions in which the holders of the warrants reside, the warrants may be deprived of any value, the market for the warrants may be limited and they may expire worthless if they cannot be sold.

We may amend the terms of the warrants in a manner that may be adverse to holders with the approval by the holders of at least 50% of the then outstanding warrants.

Our warrants will be issued in registered form under a warrant agreement between Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, as warrant agent, and us. The warrant agreement provides that the terms of the warrants may be amended without the consent of any holder to cure any ambiguity or correct any defective provision. The warrant agreement requires the approval by the holders of at least 50% of the then outstanding warrants (including the private warrants) in order to make any change that adversely affects the interests of the registered holders.

We may amend the terms of the rights in a manner that may be adverse to holders with the approval by the holders of at least 50% of the then outstanding rights.

Our rights will be issued in registered form under a right agreement between Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, as rights agent, and us. The right agreement provides that the terms of the rights may be amended without the consent of any holder to cure any ambiguity or correct any defective provision. The right agreement requires the approval by the holders of at least 50% of the then outstanding rights (including the rights underlying the private units, or “private rights”) in order to make any change that adversely affects the interests of the registered holders.

Since we have not yet selected a particular industry or target business with which to complete a business combination, we are unable to currently ascertain the merits or risks of the industry or business in which we may ultimately operate.

Although we intend to focus our search for target businesses on companies in the energy or energy-related industries with an emphasis on opportunities in the upstream oil and gas industry in North America where our management team's networks and experience are suited, we may consummate a business combination with a company in any industry we choose and are not limited to any particular industry or type of business. Accordingly, there is no current basis for you to evaluate the possible merits or risks of the particular industry in which we may ultimately operate or the target business which we may ultimately acquire. To the extent we complete a business combination with a financially unstable company or an entity in its development stage, we may be affected by numerous risks inherent in the business operations of those entities. If we complete a business combination with an entity in an industry characterized by a high level of risk, we may be affected by the currently unascertainable risks of that industry. Although our management will endeavor to evaluate the risks inherent in a particular industry or target business, we cannot assure you that we will properly ascertain or assess all of the significant risk factors. We also cannot assure you that an investment in our units will not ultimately prove to be less favorable to investors in this offering than a direct investment, if an opportunity were available, in a target business.

Our ability to successfully effect a business combination and to be successful thereafter will be totally dependent upon the efforts of our key personnel, some of whom may join us following a business combination. While we intend to closely scrutinize any individuals we engage after a business combination, we cannot assure you that our assessment of these individuals will prove to be correct.

Our ability to successfully effect a business combination is dependent upon the efforts of our key personnel. We believe that our success depends on the continued service of our key personnel, at least until we have consummated our initial business combination. We cannot assure you that any of our key personnel will remain with us for the immediate or foreseeable future. In addition, none of our officers are required to commit any specified amount of time to our affairs and, accordingly, our officers will have conflicts of interest in allocating management time among various business activities, including identifying potential business combinations and monitoring the related due diligence. We do not have employment agreements with, or key-man insurance on the life of, any of our officers. The unexpected loss of the services of our key personnel could have a detrimental effect on us.

The role of our key personnel after a business combination, however, cannot presently be ascertained. Although some of our key personnel serve in senior management or advisory positions following a business combination, it is likely that most, if not all, of the management of the target business will remain in place. While we intend to closely scrutinize any individuals we engage after a business combination, we cannot assure you that our assessment of these individuals will prove to be correct. These individuals may be unfamiliar with the requirements of operating a public company which could cause us to have to expend time and resources helping them become familiar with such requirements. This could be expensive and time-consuming and could lead to various regulatory issues which may adversely affect our operations.

Our officers and directors may not have significant experience or knowledge regarding the jurisdiction or industry of the target business we may seek to acquire.

We may consummate a business combination with a target business in any geographic location or industry we choose. We cannot assure you that our officers and directors will have enough experience or have sufficient knowledge relating to the jurisdiction of the target or its industry to make an informed decision regarding a business combination.

Our key personnel may negotiate employment or consulting agreements with a target business in connection with a particular business combination. These agreements may provide for them to receive compensation following a business combination and as a result, may cause them to have conflicts of interest in determining whether a particular business combination is the most advantageous.

Our key personnel will be able to remain with the company after the consummation of a business combination only if they are able to negotiate employment or consulting agreements or other appropriate arrangements in connection with the business combination. Such negotiations would take place simultaneously with the negotiation of the business combination and could provide for such individuals to receive compensation in the form of cash payments and/or our securities for services they would render to the company after the consummation of the business combination. The personal and financial interests of such individuals may influence their motivation in identifying and selecting a target business.

Our officers and directors will allocate their time to other businesses thereby causing conflicts of interest in their determination as to how much time to devote to our affairs. This could have a negative impact on our ability to consummate a business combination.

Our officers and directors are officers and/or directors of our sponsor and will not commit their full time to our affairs. We presently expect each of our employees to devote such amount of time as they reasonably believe is necessary to our business. We do not intend to have any full time employees prior to the consummation of our initial business combination. The foregoing could have a negative impact on our ability to consummate our initial business combination.

Our officers and directors may have a conflict of interest in determining whether a particular target business is appropriate for a business combination.

Each of our officers and directors is an officer and/or director of our sponsor. As described elsewhere in this prospectus, our sponsor is an oil and gas company that pursues distressed asset acquisitions in the energy industry, the same industry within which we intend to focus our search for a target business. Our sponsor recently completed a rights offering in which it raised an aggregate of approximately \$5,182,000. Of this amount, up to \$3,875,000 (assuming the underwriters' over-allotment option is exercised in full) would be used to purchase the private units with the balance being available to our sponsor for working capital purposes, including potential investments and acquisitions. However, our sponsor intends to acquire assets from businesses with private equity backing that are seeking to sell such assets for cash without retaining any equity interest in them, whereas we intend to acquire a target business from a seller that wishes to retain a significant equity interest in the combined company. Accordingly, our management team does not believe that there will be a meaningful conflict between our sponsor and our company in relation to consummating a business combination. Nevertheless, we cannot assure you of this fact and it is possible that a suitable business opportunity will be presented to our sponsor prior to its presentation to our company.

Additionally, our sponsor has waived its right to convert its founders' shares or any other shares purchased in this offering or thereafter, or to receive distributions from the trust account with respect to its founders' shares upon our liquidation if we are unable to consummate a business combination. Accordingly, the shares acquired prior to this offering, as well as the private units and any warrants purchased by our officers or directors in the aftermarket, will be worthless if we do not consummate a business combination. The personal and financial interests of our directors and officers may influence their motivation in timely identifying and selecting a target business and completing a business combination. Consequently, our directors' and officers' discretion in identifying and selecting a suitable target business may result in a conflict of interest when determining whether the terms, conditions and timing of a particular business combination are appropriate and in our stockholders' best interest.

Nasdaq may delist our securities from quotation on its exchange which could limit investors' ability to make transactions in our securities and subject us to additional trading restrictions.

We anticipate that our securities will be listed on Nasdaq, a national securities exchange, upon consummation of this offering. Although, after giving effect to this offering, we expect to meet on a pro forma basis Nasdaq's minimum initial listing standards, which generally only requires that we meet certain requirements relating to stockholders' equity, market capitalization, aggregate market value of publicly held shares and distribution requirements, we cannot assure you that our securities will continue to be listed on Nasdaq in the future prior to an initial business combination. Additionally, in connection with our initial business combination, it is likely that Nasdaq will require us to file a new initial listing application and meet its initial listing requirements as opposed to its more lenient continued listing requirements. We cannot assure you that we will be able to meet those initial listing requirements at that time.

If Nasdaq delists our securities from trading on its exchange, we could face significant material adverse consequences, including:

- a limited availability of market quotations for our securities;
- reduced liquidity with respect to our securities;
- a determination that our shares of common stock are "penny stock" which will require brokers trading in our shares of common stock to adhere to more stringent rules, possibly resulting in a reduced level of trading activity in the secondary trading market for our shares of common stock;
- a limited amount of news and analyst coverage for our company; and
- a decreased ability to issue additional securities or obtain additional financing in the future.

The National Securities Markets Improvement Act of 1996, which is a federal statute, prevents or preempts the states from regulating the sale of certain securities, which are referred to as "covered securities." Because we expect that our units and eventually our common stock, rights and warrants will be listed on Nasdaq, our units, common stock, rights and warrants will be covered securities. Although the states are preempted from regulating the sale of our securities, the federal statute does allow the states to investigate companies if there is a suspicion of fraud, and, if there is a finding of fraudulent activity, then the states can regulate or bar the sale of covered securities in a particular case. While we are not aware of a state having used these powers to prohibit or restrict the sale of securities issued by blank check companies, certain state securities regulators view blank check companies unfavorably and might use these powers, or threaten to use these powers, to hinder the sale of securities of blank check companies in their states. Further, if we were no longer listed on Nasdaq, our securities would not be covered securities and we would be subject to regulation in each state in which we offer our securities.

We are an “emerging growth company” and we cannot be certain if the reduced disclosure requirements applicable to emerging growth companies will make our shares of common stock less attractive to investors.

We are an “emerging growth company,” as defined in the JOBS Act. We will remain an “emerging growth company” for up to five years. However, if our non-convertible debt issued within a three year period or revenues exceeds \$1.07 billion, or the market value of our shares of common stock that are held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million on the last day of the second fiscal quarter of any given fiscal year, we would cease to be an emerging growth company as of the following fiscal year. As an emerging growth company, we are not required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, we have reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements and we are exempt from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. Additionally, as an emerging growth company, we have elected to delay the adoption of new or revised accounting standards that have different effective dates for public and private companies until those standards apply to private companies. As such, our financial statements may not be comparable to companies that comply with public company effective dates. We cannot predict if investors will find our shares of common stock less attractive because we may rely on these provisions. If some investors find our shares of common stock less attractive as a result, there may be a less active trading market for our shares and our share price may be more volatile.

We may only be able to complete one business combination with the proceeds of this offering, which will cause us to be solely dependent on a single business which may have a limited number of products or services.

It is likely we will consummate a business combination with a single target business, although we have the ability to simultaneously acquire several target businesses. By consummating a business combination with only a single entity, our lack of diversification may subject us to numerous economic, competitive and regulatory developments. Further, we would not be able to diversify our operations or benefit from the possible spreading of risks or offsetting of losses, unlike other entities which may have the resources to complete several business combinations in different industries or different areas of a single industry. Accordingly, the prospects for our success may be:

- solely dependent upon the performance of a single business, or
- dependent upon the development or market acceptance of a single or limited number of products, processes or services.

This lack of diversification may subject us to numerous economic, competitive and regulatory developments, any or all of which may have a substantial adverse impact upon the particular industry in which we may operate subsequent to a business combination.

Alternatively, if we determine to simultaneously acquire several businesses and such businesses are owned by different sellers, we will need for each of such sellers to agree that our purchase of its business is contingent on the simultaneous closings of the other business combinations, which may make it more difficult for us, and delay our ability, to complete the business combination. With multiple business combinations, we could also face additional risks, including additional burdens and costs with respect to possible multiple negotiations and due diligence investigations (if there are multiple sellers) and the additional risks associated with the subsequent assimilation of the operations and services or products of the acquired companies in a single operating business. If we are unable to adequately address these risks, it could negatively impact our profitability and results of operations.

The ability of our stockholders to exercise their conversion rights or sell their shares to us in a tender offer may not allow us to effectuate the most desirable business combination or optimize our capital structure.

If our business combination requires us to use substantially all of our cash to pay the purchase price, because we will not know how many stockholders may exercise conversion rights or seek to sell their shares to us in a tender offer, we may either need to reserve part of the trust account for possible payment upon such conversion, or we may need to arrange third party financing to help fund our business combination. In the event that the acquisition involves the issuance of our stock as consideration, we may be required to issue a higher percentage of our stock to make up for a shortfall in funds. Raising additional funds to cover any shortfall may involve dilutive equity financing or incurring indebtedness at higher than desirable levels. This may limit our ability to effectuate the most attractive business combination available to us.

In connection with any vote to approve a business combination, we will offer each public stockholder the option to vote in favor of a proposed business combination and still seek conversion of his, her or its shares.

In connection with any vote to approve a business combination, we will offer each public stockholder (but not our sponsor, officers or directors) the right to have his, her or its shares of common stock converted to cash (subject to the limitations described elsewhere in this prospectus) regardless of whether such stockholder votes for or against such proposed business combination. This ability to seek conversion while voting in favor of our proposed business combination may make it more likely that we will consummate a business combination.

In connection with any stockholder meeting called to approve a proposed initial business combination, we may require stockholders who wish to convert their shares in connection with a proposed business combination to comply with specific requirements for conversion that may make it more difficult for them to exercise their conversion rights prior to the deadline for exercising their rights.

In connection with any stockholder meeting called to approve a proposed initial business combination, each public stockholder will have the right, regardless of whether he is voting for or against such proposed business combination, to demand that we convert his shares into a pro rata share of the trust account as of two business days prior to the consummation of the initial business combination. We may require public stockholders who wish to convert their shares in connection with a proposed business combination to either (i) tender their certificates to our transfer agent or (ii) deliver their shares to the transfer agent electronically using the Depository Trust Company's DWAC (Deposit/Withdrawal At Custodian) System, at the holders' option, in each case prior to a date set forth in the tender offer documents or proxy materials sent in connection with the proposal to approve the business combination. In order to obtain a physical stock certificate, a stockholder's broker and/or clearing broker, DTC and our transfer agent will need to act to facilitate this request. It is our understanding that stockholders should generally allot at least two weeks to obtain physical certificates from the transfer agent. However, because we do not have any control over this process or over the brokers or DTC, it may take significantly longer than two weeks to obtain a physical stock certificate. While we have been advised that it takes a short time to deliver shares through the DWAC System, we cannot assure you of this fact. Accordingly, if it takes longer than we anticipate for stockholders to deliver their shares, stockholders who wish to convert may be unable to meet the deadline for exercising their conversion rights and thus may be unable to convert their shares.

If, in connection with any stockholder meeting called to approve a proposed business combination, we require public stockholders who wish to convert their shares to comply with specific requirements for conversion, such converting stockholders may be unable to sell their securities when they wish to in the event that the proposed business combination is not approved.

If we require public stockholders who wish to convert their shares to comply with specific requirements for conversion and such proposed business combination is not consummated, we will promptly return such certificates to the tendering public stockholders. Accordingly, investors who attempted to convert their shares in such a circumstance will be unable to sell their securities after the failed acquisition until we have returned their securities to them. The market price for our shares of common stock may decline during this time and you may not be able to sell your securities when you wish to, even while other stockholders that did not seek conversion may be able to sell their securities.

Because of our structure, other companies may have a competitive advantage and we may not be able to consummate an attractive business combination.

We expect to encounter intense competition from entities other than blank check companies having a business objective similar to ours, including venture capital funds, leveraged buyout funds and operating businesses competing for acquisitions. Many of these entities are well established and have extensive experience in identifying and effecting business combinations directly or through affiliates. Many of these competitors possess greater technical, human and other resources than we do and our financial resources will be relatively limited when contrasted with those of many of these competitors. While we believe that there are numerous potential target businesses that we could acquire with the net proceeds of this offering, our ability to compete in acquiring certain sizable target businesses will be limited by our available financial resources. This inherent competitive limitation gives others an advantage in pursuing the acquisition of certain target businesses. Additionally, our sponsor is an oil and gas company that pursues distressed asset acquisitions in the energy industry, the same industry within which we intend to focus our search for a target business. While our sponsor intends to acquire assets from businesses with private equity backing that are seeking to sell such assets for cash without retaining any equity interest in them (as opposed to our intent to acquire a target business from a seller that wishes to retain a significant equity interest in the combined company), it is not limited to this type of acquisition and we therefore could nevertheless be subject to competition for acquisitions with our sponsor. Furthermore, seeking stockholder approval or engaging in a tender offer in connection with any proposed business combination may delay the consummation of such a transaction. Additionally, our outstanding rights and warrants, and the future dilution they potentially represent, may not be viewed favorably by certain target businesses. Any of the foregoing may place us at a competitive disadvantage in successfully negotiating a business combination.

We may be unable to obtain additional financing, if required, to complete a business combination or to fund the operations and growth of the target business, which could compel us to restructure or abandon a particular business combination.

Although we believe that the net proceeds of this offering will be sufficient to allow us to consummate a business combination, because we have not yet identified any prospective target business, we cannot ascertain the capital requirements for any particular transaction. If the net proceeds of this offering prove to be insufficient, either because of the size of the business combination, the depletion of the available net proceeds in search of a target business, or the obligation to convert into cash a significant number of shares from dissenting stockholders, we will be required to seek additional financing. Such financing may not be available on acceptable terms, if at all. To the extent that additional financing proves to be unavailable when needed to consummate a particular business combination, we would be compelled to either restructure the transaction or abandon that particular business combination and seek an alternative target business candidate. In addition, if we consummate a business combination, we may require additional financing to fund the operations or growth of the target business. The failure to secure additional financing could have a material adverse effect on the continued development or growth of the target business. None of our sponsor, officers, directors or stockholders is required to provide any financing to us in connection with or after a business combination.

Our sponsor will control a substantial interest in us and thus may influence certain actions requiring a stockholder vote.

Upon consummation of our offering, our sponsor will own approximately 22.2% of our issued and outstanding shares of common stock (assuming it does not purchase any units in this offering). None of our sponsor, officers, directors or their affiliates has indicated any intention to purchase units in this offering or any units or shares of common stock from persons in the open market or in private transactions. However, our sponsor, officers, directors or their affiliates could determine in the future to make such purchases in the open market or in private transactions, to the extent permitted by law, in order to influence the vote or magnitude of the number of shareholders seeking to tender their shares to us. In connection with any vote for a proposed business combination, our sponsor, as well as all of our officers and directors, have agreed to vote the shares of common stock owned by them immediately before this offering as well as any shares of common stock acquired in this offering or in the aftermarket in favor of such proposed business combination.

Our board of directors is and will be divided into three classes, each of which will generally serve for a term of three years with only one class of directors being elected in each year. It is unlikely that there will be an annual meeting of stockholders to elect new directors prior to the consummation of a business combination, in which case all of the current directors will continue in office until at least the consummation of the business combination. Accordingly, you may not be able to exercise your voting rights under corporate law for up to 21 months. If there is an annual meeting, as a consequence of our “staggered” board of directors, only a minority of the board of directors will be considered for election and our sponsor, because of their ownership position, will have considerable influence regarding the outcome. Accordingly, our sponsor will continue to exert control at least until the consummation of a business combination.

Our sponsor paid an aggregate of \$25,000, or approximately \$0.01 per share, for the founders' shares and, accordingly, you will experience immediate and substantial dilution from the purchase of our shares of common stock.

The difference between the public offering price per share (allocating all of the unit purchase price to the common stock, including the common stock underlying the rights included in the units, and none to the warrants included in the units) and the pro forma net tangible book value per share of common stock after this offering constitutes the dilution to the investors in this offering. Our sponsor acquired the founders' shares at a nominal price, significantly contributing to this dilution. Upon consummation of this offering, you and the other new investors will incur an immediate and substantial dilution of approximately 87.3% or \$7.94 per share (the difference between the pro forma net tangible book value per share \$1.15, and the initial offering price of \$9.09 per share). This is because investors in this offering will be contributing approximately 96.6% of the total amount paid to us for our outstanding securities after this offering but will only own approximately 79.2% of our outstanding securities and this becomes exacerbated to the extent that public stockholders seek to convert their shares into a pro rata share of the trust proceeds. Accordingly, the per-share purchase price you will be paying substantially exceeds our per share net tangible book value.

Our outstanding rights, warrants and unit purchase options may have an adverse effect on the market price of our common stock and make it more difficult to effect a business combination.

We will be issuing rights to receive 1,000,000 shares of common stock and warrants to purchase 10,000,000 shares of common stock as part of the units offered by this prospectus and the private rights to receive 35,000 shares of common stock and private warrants to purchase 350,000 shares of common stock. We will also issue unit purchase options to purchase 500,000 units to the representative of the underwriters which, if exercised, will result in the issuance of 500,000 shares of common stock, rights to receive 50,000 shares of common stock and warrants to purchase an additional 500,000 shares of common stock. We may also issue other units to our sponsor, officers or directors in payment of working capital loans made to us as described in this prospectus. To the extent we issue shares of common stock to effect a business combination, the potential for the issuance of a substantial number of additional shares upon exercise of these warrants could make us a less attractive acquisition vehicle in the eyes of a target business. Such securities, when exercised, will increase the number of issued and outstanding shares of common stock and reduce the value of the shares issued to complete the business combination. Accordingly, our rights, warrants and unit purchase options may make it more difficult to effectuate a business combination or increase the cost of acquiring the target business. Additionally, the sale, or even the possibility of sale, of the shares underlying the rights, warrants or unit purchase options could have an adverse effect on the market price for our securities or on our ability to obtain future financing. If and to the extent these warrants and option are exercised, you may experience dilution to your holdings.

We may redeem your unexpired warrants prior to their exercise at a time that is disadvantageous to you, thereby making your warrants worthless.

We have the ability to redeem outstanding warrants (excluding the private warrants and any warrants underlying additional units issued to our sponsor, officers or directors in payment of working capital loans made to us but including any outstanding warrants issued upon exercise of the unit purchase option issued to EarlyBirdCapital) at any time after they become exercisable and prior to their expiration, at a price of \$0.01 per warrant, provided that the last reported sales price of the common stock equals or exceeds \$18.00 per share (as adjusted for stock splits, stock dividends, reorganizations and recapitalizations) for any 20 trading days within a 30 trading-day period ending on the third business day prior to proper notice of such redemption provided that on the date we give notice of redemption and during the entire period thereafter until the time we redeem the warrants, we have an effective registration statement under the Securities Act covering the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants and a current prospectus relating to them is available. If and when the warrants become redeemable by us, we may exercise our redemption right even if we are unable to register or qualify the underlying securities for sale under all applicable state securities laws. Redemption of the outstanding warrants could force you (i) to exercise your warrants and pay the exercise price therefor at a time when it may be disadvantageous for you to do so, (ii) to sell your warrants at the then-current market price when you might otherwise wish to hold your warrants or (iii) to accept the nominal redemption price which, at the time the outstanding warrants are called for redemption, is likely to be substantially less than the market value of your warrants. None of the private warrants will be redeemable by us so long as they are held by our sponsor or its permitted transferees.

Our management's ability to require holders of our warrants to exercise such warrants on a cashless basis will cause holders to receive fewer shares of common stock upon their exercise of the warrants than they would have received had they been able to exercise their warrants for cash.

If we call our public warrants for redemption after the redemption criteria described elsewhere in this prospectus have been satisfied, our management will have the option to require any holder that wishes to exercise his warrant (including any warrants held by our sponsor, officers or directors or their permitted transferees) to do so on a "cashless basis." If our management chooses to require holders to exercise their warrants on a cashless basis, the number of shares of common stock received by a holder upon exercise will be fewer than it would have been had such holder exercised his warrant for cash. This will have the effect of reducing the potential "upside" of the holder's investment in our company.

If our security holders exercise their registration rights, it may have an adverse effect on the market price of our shares of common stock and the existence of these rights may make it more difficult to effect a business combination.

Our sponsor is entitled to make a demand that we register the resale of the founders' shares at any time commencing three months prior to the date on which their shares may be released from escrow. Additionally, the holders of the private units and any units our sponsor, officers, directors, or their affiliates may be issued in payment of working capital loans made to us are entitled to demand that we register the resale of the private units and any other units we issue to them (and the underlying securities) commencing at any time after we consummate an initial business combination. The presence of these additional shares of common stock trading in the public market may have an adverse effect on the market price of our securities. In addition, the existence of these rights may make it more difficult to effectuate a business combination or increase the cost of acquiring the target business, as the stockholders of the target business may be discouraged from entering into a business combination with us or will request a higher price for their securities because of the potential effect the exercise of such rights may have on the trading market for our shares of common stock.

EarlyBirdCapital may have a conflict of interest in rendering services to us in connection with our initial business combination.

We have engaged EarlyBirdCapital to assist us in connection with our initial business combination. We will pay EarlyBirdCapital a cash fee for such services upon the consummation of our initial business combination in an amount equal to 3.5% of the total gross proceeds raised in the offering. This financial interest may result in EarlyBirdCapital having a conflict of interest when providing the services to us in connection with an initial business combination.

If we are deemed to be an investment company, we may be required to institute burdensome compliance requirements and our activities may be restricted, which may make it difficult for us to complete a business combination.

A company that, among other things, is or holds itself out as being engaged primarily, or proposes to engage primarily, in the business of investing, reinvesting, owning, trading or holding certain types of securities would be deemed an investment company under the Investment Company Act, as amended, or the Investment Company Act. Since we will invest the proceeds held in the trust account, it is possible that we could be deemed an investment company. Notwithstanding the foregoing, we do not believe that our anticipated principal activities will subject us to the Investment Company Act. To this end, the proceeds held in trust may be invested by the trustee only in United States "government securities" within the meaning of Section 2(a)(16) of the Investment Company Act having a maturity of 180 days or less or in money market funds meeting certain conditions under Rule 2a-7 promulgated under the Investment Company Act which invest only in direct U.S. government treasury obligations. By restricting the investment of the proceeds to these instruments, we intend to meet the requirements for the exemption provided in Rule 3a-1 promulgated under the Investment Company Act.

If we are nevertheless deemed to be an investment company under the Investment Company Act, we may be subject to certain restrictions that may make it more difficult for us to complete a business combination, including:

- restrictions on the nature of our investments; and
- restrictions on the issuance of securities.

In addition, we may have imposed upon us certain burdensome requirements, including:

- registration as an investment company;
- adoption of a specific form of corporate structure; and
- reporting, record keeping, voting, proxy, compliance policies and procedures and disclosure requirements and other rules and regulations.

Compliance with these additional regulatory burdens would require additional expense for which we have not allotted.

The determination for the offering price of our units is more arbitrary than the pricing of securities for an operating company in a particular industry.

Prior to this offering there has been no public market for any of our securities. The public offering price of the units and the terms of the rights and warrants were negotiated between us and EarlyBirdCapital, Inc. Factors considered in determining the prices and terms of the units, including the shares of common stock, rights and warrants underlying the units, include:

- the history and prospects of companies whose principal business is the acquisition of other companies;
- prior offerings of those companies;
- our prospects for acquiring an operating business at attractive values;
- our capital structure;
- an assessment of our management and their experience in identifying operating companies; and
- general conditions of the securities markets at the time of the offering.

However, although these factors were considered, the determination of our offering price is more arbitrary than the pricing of securities for an operating company in a particular industry since we have no historical operations or financial results to compare them to.

If we do not conduct an adequate due diligence investigation of a target business, we may be required to subsequently take write-downs or write-offs, restructuring, and impairment or other charges that could have a significant negative effect on our financial condition, results of operations and our stock price, which could cause you to lose some or all of your investment.

We must conduct a due diligence investigation of the target businesses we intend to acquire. Intensive due diligence is time consuming and expensive due to the operations, accounting, finance and legal professionals who must be involved in the due diligence process. Even if we conduct extensive due diligence on a target business, this diligence may not reveal all material issues that may affect a particular target business, and factors outside the control of the target business and outside of our control may later arise. If our diligence fails to identify issues specific to a target business, industry or the environment in which the target business operates, we may be forced to later write-down or write-off assets, restructure our operations, or incur impairment or other charges that could result in our reporting losses. Even though these charges may be non-cash items and not have an immediate impact on our liquidity, the fact that we report charges of this nature could contribute to negative market perceptions about us or our common stock. In addition, charges of this nature may cause us to violate net worth or other covenants to which we may be subject as a result of assuming pre-existing debt held by a target business or by virtue of our obtaining post-combination debt financing.

The requirement that we complete an initial business combination within 21 months from the closing of this offering may give potential target businesses leverage over us in negotiating a business combination.

We have 21 months from the closing of this offering to complete an initial business combination. Any potential target business with which we enter into negotiations concerning a business combination will be aware of this requirement. Consequently, such target business may obtain leverage over us in negotiating a business combination, knowing that if we do not complete a business combination with that particular target business, we may be unable to complete a business combination with any other target business. This risk will increase as we get closer to the time limit referenced above.

We may not obtain a fairness opinion with respect to the target business that we seek to acquire and therefore you may be relying solely on the judgment of our board of directors in approving a proposed business combination.

We will only be required to obtain a fairness opinion with respect to the target business that we seek to acquire if it is an entity that is affiliated with any of our officers, directors or sponsor. In all other instances, we will have no obligation to obtain an opinion. Accordingly, investors will be relying solely on the judgment of our board of directors in approving a proposed business combination.

Resources could be spent researching acquisitions that are not consummated, which could materially adversely affect subsequent attempts to locate and acquire or merge with another business.

It is anticipated that the investigation of each specific target business and the negotiation, drafting, and execution of relevant agreements, disclosure documents, and other instruments will require substantial management time and attention and substantial costs for accountants, attorneys and others. If a decision is made not to complete a specific business combination, the costs incurred up to that point for the proposed transaction likely would not be recoverable. Furthermore, even if an agreement is reached relating to a specific target business, we may fail to consummate the business combination for any number of reasons including those beyond our control. Any such event will result in a loss to us of the related costs incurred which could materially adversely affect subsequent attempts to locate and acquire or merge with another business.

Compliance with the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 will require substantial financial and management resources and may increase the time and costs of completing an acquisition.

Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 requires that we evaluate and report on our system of internal controls and may require that we have such system of internal controls audited beginning with our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ending December 31, 2018. If we fail to maintain the adequacy of our internal controls, we could be subject to regulatory scrutiny, civil or criminal penalties and/or stockholder litigation. Any inability to provide reliable financial reports could harm our business. Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act also requires that our independent registered public accounting firm report on management's evaluation of our system of internal controls. A target company may not be in compliance with the provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act regarding adequacy of their internal controls. The development of the internal controls of any such entity to achieve compliance with the Sarbanes-Oxley Act may increase the time and costs necessary to complete any such acquisition. Furthermore, any failure to implement required new or improved controls, or difficulties encountered in the implementation of adequate controls over our financial processes and reporting in the future, could harm our operating results or cause us to fail to meet our reporting obligations. Inferior internal controls could also cause investors to lose confidence in our reported financial information, which could have a negative effect on the trading price of our stock.

If we effect a business combination with a company located outside of the United States, we would be subject to a variety of additional risks that may negatively impact our operations.

We may effect a business combination with a company located outside of the United States. If we did, we would be subject to any special considerations or risks associated with companies operating in the target business' home jurisdiction, including any of the following:

- rules and regulations or currency conversion or corporate withholding taxes on individuals;
- tariffs and trade barriers;
- regulations related to customs and import/export matters;
- longer payment cycles;
- tax issues, such as tax law changes and variations in tax laws as compared to the United States;
- currency fluctuations and exchange controls;
- challenges in collecting accounts receivable;
- cultural and language differences;

- employment regulations;
- crime, strikes, riots, civil disturbances, terrorist attacks and wars; and
- deterioration of political relations with the United States.

We cannot assure you that we would be able to adequately address these additional risks. If we were unable to do so, our operations might suffer.

If we effect a business combination with a company located outside of the United States, the laws applicable to such company will likely govern all of our material agreements and we may not be able to enforce our legal rights.

If we effect a business combination with a company located outside of the United States, the laws of the country in which such company operates will govern almost all of the material agreements relating to its operations. We cannot assure you that the target business will be able to enforce any of its material agreements or that remedies will be available in this new jurisdiction. The system of laws and the enforcement of existing laws in such jurisdiction may not be as certain in implementation and interpretation as in the United States. The inability to enforce or obtain a remedy under any of our future agreements could result in a significant loss of business, business opportunities or capital. Additionally, if we acquire a company located outside of the United States, it is likely that substantially all of our assets would be located outside of the United States and some of our officers and directors might reside outside of the United States. As a result, it may not be possible for investors in the United States to enforce their legal rights, to effect service of process upon our directors or officers or to enforce judgments of United States courts predicated upon civil liabilities and criminal penalties of our directors and officers under federal securities laws.

Provisions in our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and bylaws and Delaware law may inhibit a takeover of us, which could limit the price investors might be willing to pay in the future for our common stock and could entrench management.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and bylaws contain provisions that may discourage unsolicited takeover proposals that stockholders may consider to be in their best interests. Our board of directors is divided into three classes, each of which will generally serve for a term of three years with only one class of directors being elected in each year. As a result, at a given annual meeting only a minority of the board of directors may be considered for election. Since our “staggered board” may prevent our stockholders from replacing a majority of our board of directors at any given annual meeting, it may entrench management and discourage unsolicited stockholder proposals that may be in the best interests of stockholders. Moreover, our board of directors has the ability to designate the terms of and issue new series of preferred stock.

We are also subject to anti-takeover provisions under Delaware law, which could delay or prevent a change of control. Together these provisions may make more difficult the removal of management and may discourage transactions that otherwise could involve payment of a premium over prevailing market prices for our securities.

Because we must furnish our stockholders with target business financial statements prepared in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles or international financial reporting standards, we will not be able to complete a business combination with prospective target businesses unless their financial statements are prepared in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

The federal proxy rules require that a proxy statement with respect to a vote on a business combination meeting certain financial significance tests include historical and/or pro forma financial statement disclosure in periodic reports. These financial statements may be required to be prepared in accordance with, or be reconciled to, accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, or GAAP, or international financial reporting standards, or IFRS, depending on the circumstances, and the historical financial statements may be required to be audited in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States), or PCAOB. We will include the same financial statement disclosure in connection with any tender offer documents we use, whether or not they are required under the tender offer rules. Additionally, to the extent we furnish our stockholders with financial statements prepared in accordance with IFRS, such financial statements will need to be audited in accordance with U.S. GAAP at the time of the consummation of the business combination. These financial statement requirements may limit the pool of potential target businesses we may acquire.

There is currently no market for our securities and a market for our securities may not develop, which would adversely affect the liquidity and price of our securities.

There is currently no market for our securities. Stockholders therefore have no access to information about prior market history on which to base their investment decision. Following this offering, the price of our securities may vary significantly due to one or more potential business combinations and general market or economic conditions. Furthermore, an active trading market for our securities may never develop or, if developed, it may not be sustained. You may be unable to sell your securities unless a market can be established and sustained.

Changes in laws or regulations, or a failure to comply with any laws and regulations, may adversely affect our business, investments and results of operations.

We are subject to laws and regulations enacted by national, regional and local governments. In particular, we will be required to comply with certain SEC and other legal requirements. Compliance with, and monitoring of, applicable laws and regulations may be difficult, time consuming and costly. Those laws and regulations and their interpretation and application may also change from time to time and those changes could have a material adverse effect on our business, investments and results of operations. In addition, a failure to comply with applicable laws or regulations, as interpreted and applied, could have a material adverse effect on our business and results of operations.

There may be tax consequences to our business combinations that may adversely affect us.

While we expect to undertake any merger or acquisition so as to minimize taxes both to the acquired business and/or asset and us, such business combination might not meet the statutory requirements of a tax-free reorganization, or the parties might not obtain the intended tax-free treatment upon a transfer of shares or assets. A non-qualifying reorganization could result in the imposition of substantial taxes.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation will provide, subject to limited exceptions, that the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware will be the sole and exclusive forum for certain stockholder litigation matters, which could limit our stockholders' ability to obtain a favorable judicial forum for disputes with us or our directors, officers, employees or stockholders.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation requires, to the fullest extent permitted by law, that derivative actions brought in our name, actions against directors, officers and employees for breach of fiduciary duty and other similar actions may be brought only in the Court of Chancery in the State of Delaware and, if brought outside of Delaware, the stockholder bringing the suit will be deemed to have consented to service of process on such stockholder's counsel. Any person or entity purchasing or otherwise acquiring any interest in shares of our capital stock shall be deemed to have notice of and consented to the forum provisions in our amended and restated certificate of incorporation.

This choice of forum provision may limit a stockholder's ability to bring a claim in a judicial forum that it finds favorable for disputes with us or any of our directors, officers, other employees or stockholders, which may discourage lawsuits with respect to such claims. Alternatively, if a court were to find the choice of forum provision contained in our amended and restated certificate of incorporation to be inapplicable or unenforceable in an action, we may incur additional costs associated with resolving such action in other jurisdictions, which could harm our business, operating results and financial condition.

If we consummate a business combination with a target business in the energy industry, we would be subject to the risks attendant to such industry.

If we are successful in consummating a business combination with a target business in the energy industry, we would be subject to all of the risks attendant to such industry, including, among others:

- fluctuations in energy prices causing a reduction in the demand or profitability of the products or services we may ultimately produce or offer;
- changes in technology rendering our products or services obsolete following a business combination;
- increasing governmental regulation; and
- failure to comply with governmental regulations resulting in the imposition of penalties, fines or restrictions on operations and remedial liabilities.

CAUTIONARY NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

The statements contained in this prospectus that are not purely historical are forward-looking statements. Our forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, statements regarding our or our management's expectations, hopes, beliefs, intentions or strategies regarding the future. In addition, any statements that refer to projections, forecasts or other characterizations of future events or circumstances, including any underlying assumptions, are forward-looking statements. The words "anticipates," "believe," "continue," "could," "estimate," "expect," "intends," "may," "might," "plan," "possible," "potential," "predicts," "project," "should," "would" and similar expressions may identify forward-looking statements, but the absence of these words does not mean that a statement is not forward-looking. Forward-looking statements in this prospectus may include, for example, statements about our:

- ability to complete our initial business combination;
- success in retaining or recruiting, or changes required in, our officers, key employees or directors following our initial business combination;
- officers and directors allocating their time to other businesses and potentially having conflicts of interest with our business or in approving our initial business combination, as a result of which they would then receive expense reimbursements;
- potential ability to obtain additional financing to complete a business combination;
- pool of prospective target businesses;
- ability of our officers and directors to generate a number of potential investment opportunities;
- potential change in control if we acquire one or more target businesses for stock;
- public securities' potential liquidity and trading;
- the lack of a market for our securities;
- expectations regarding the time during which we will be an "emerging growth company" under the JOBS Act;
- use of proceeds not held in the trust account or available to us from interest income on the trust account balance; or
- financial performance following this offering.

The forward-looking statements contained in this prospectus are based on our current expectations and beliefs concerning future developments and their potential effects on us. There can be no assurance that future developments affecting us will be those that we have anticipated. These forward-looking statements involve a number of risks, uncertainties (some of which are beyond our control) or other assumptions that may cause actual results or performance to be materially different from those expressed or implied by these forward-looking statements. These risks and uncertainties include, but are not limited to, those factors described under the heading "*Risk Factors*." Should one or more of these risks or uncertainties materialize, or should any of our assumptions prove incorrect, actual results may vary in material respects from those projected in these forward-looking statements. We undertake no obligation to update or revise any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise, except as may be required under applicable securities laws.

USE OF PROCEEDS

We estimate that the net proceeds of this offering, in addition to the funds we will receive from the sale of the private units (all of which will be deposited into the trust account), will be as set forth in the following table:

	<u>Without Over- Allotment Option</u>	<u>Over-Allotment Option Exercised</u>
Gross proceeds		
From offering	\$ 100,000,000	\$ 115,000,000
From private placement	3,500,000	3,875,000
Total gross proceeds	<u>103,500,000</u>	<u>118,875,000</u>
<i>Offering expenses</i> ⁽¹⁾		
Underwriting discount (2.0% of gross proceeds from units offered to public)	2,000,000 ⁽²⁾	2,300,000 ⁽²⁾
Legal fees and expenses	250,000	250,000
Nasdaq Listing Fees	75,000	75,000
Printing and engraving expenses	40,000	40,000
Accounting fees and expenses	40,000	40,000
FINRA filing fee	18,625	18,625
SEC registration fee	14,000	14,000
Miscellaneous expenses	62,375	62,375
Total expenses	<u>2,500,000</u>	<u>2,800,000</u>
<i>Net proceeds</i>		
Held in trust	100,500,000	115,575,000
Not held in trust	500,000	500,000
Total net proceeds	<u>\$ 101,000,000</u>	<u>\$ 116,075,000</u>
<i>Use of net proceeds not held in trust</i> ⁽³⁾⁽⁴⁾		
Legal, accounting and other third party expenses attendant to the search for target businesses and to the due diligence investigation, structuring and negotiation of a business combination	\$ 84,000	(16.8)%
Due diligence of prospective target businesses by officers, directors and sponsor	50,000	(10.0)%
Legal and accounting fees relating to SEC reporting obligations	100,000	(20.0)%
Payment of administrative fee to our sponsor (\$10,000 per month for up to 21 months)	210,000	(42.0)%
Working capital to cover miscellaneous expenses, D&O insurance, general corporate purposes and reserves	56,000	(11.2)%
Total	<u>\$ 500,000</u>	<u>(100.0)%</u>

(1) A portion of the offering expenses, including the SEC registration fee, the FINRA filing fee, the non-refundable portion of the Nasdaq listing fee and a portion of the legal and audit fees, have been paid from the funds we received from our sponsor described below. These funds will be repaid out of the proceeds of this offering available to us.

(2) No discounts or commissions will be paid with respect to the purchase of the private units.

(3) The amount of proceeds not held in trust will remain constant at approximately \$500,000 even if the over-allotment is exercised.

(4) These are estimates only. Our actual expenditures for some or all of these items may differ from the estimates set forth herein. For example, we may incur greater legal and accounting expenses than our current estimates in connection with negotiating and structuring our initial business combination based upon the level of complexity of that business combination. We do not anticipate any change in our intended use of proceeds, other than fluctuations among the current categories of allocated expenses, which fluctuations, to the extent they exceed current estimates for any specific category of expenses, would be deducted from our excess working capital.

Our sponsor has committed to purchase the private units (for an aggregate purchase price of \$3,500,000) from us on a private placement basis simultaneously with the consummation of this offering. Our sponsor has also agreed that if the over-allotment option is exercised by the underwriters in full or in part, it will purchase from us an additional number of private units (up to a maximum of 37,500 private units) at a price of \$10.00 per private unit necessary to maintain in the trust account \$10.05 per unit sold to the public in this offering. These additional private units will be purchased in a private placement that will occur simultaneously with the purchase of units resulting from the exercise of the over-allotment option. The private units are identical to the units sold in this offering subject to certain limited exceptions as described elsewhere in this prospectus. All of the proceeds we receive from these purchases will be placed in the trust account described below.

\$100,500,000, or \$115,575,000 if the over-allotment option is exercised in full, of net proceeds of this offering and the sale of the private units, will be placed in a U.S.-based trust account at Morgan Stanley, maintained by Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, New York, New York, as trustee. The funds held in trust will be invested only in United States “government securities” within the meaning of Section 2(a)(16) of the Investment Company Act having a maturity of 180 days or less, or in money market funds meeting certain conditions under Rule 2a-7 promulgated under the Investment Company Act which invest only in direct U.S. government treasury obligations, so that we are not deemed to be an investment company under the Investment Company Act. Except with respect to (i) interest earned on the funds held in the trust account that may be released to us to pay our income or other tax obligations and (ii) up to \$50,000 of interest earned on the funds held in the trust account that may be released to us to pay our liquidation and dissolution expenses, the proceeds will not be released from the trust account until the earlier of the completion of a business combination or our redemption of 100% of the outstanding public shares if we have not completed a business combination in the required time period. The proceeds held in the trust account may be used as consideration to pay the sellers of a target business with which we complete a business combination. Any amounts not paid as consideration to the sellers of the target business may be used to finance operations of the target business.

The payment to our sponsor of a monthly fee of \$10,000 is for general and administrative services including office space, utilities and secretarial support. This arrangement is being agreed to by our sponsor for our benefit and is not intended to provide our sponsor or affiliated officers and directors with compensation in lieu of a salary. We believe, based on rents and fees for similar services in the Minneapolis, Minnesota area, that the fee charged by our sponsor is at least as favorable as we could have obtained from an unaffiliated person. This arrangement will terminate upon completion of our initial business combination or the distribution of the trust account to our public stockholders. Other than the \$10,000 per month fee and the repayment of the \$125,000 loan from our sponsor (none of which payments will be made from the proceeds of this offering held in the trust account prior to the completion of our initial business combination), no compensation of any kind will be paid to our sponsor, officers, directors or any of their respective affiliates, for services rendered to us prior to or in connection with the consummation of our initial business combination (regardless of the type of transaction that it is). However, such entity and individuals will receive reimbursement for any out-of-pocket expenses incurred by them in connection with activities on our behalf, such as identifying potential target businesses, performing business due diligence on suitable target businesses and business combinations as well as traveling to and from the offices, plants or similar locations of prospective target businesses to examine their operations. Our audit committee will review and approve all reimbursements and payments made to our sponsor, officers, directors or our or their respective affiliates, with any interested director abstaining from such review and approval. There is no limit on the amount of such expenses reimbursable by us; provided, however, that to the extent such expenses exceed the available proceeds not deposited in the trust account, such expenses would not be reimbursed by us unless we consummate an initial business combination. Since the role of present management after a business combination is uncertain, we have no ability to determine what remuneration, if any, will be paid to those persons after a business combination.

Regardless of whether the over-allotment option is exercised in full, the net proceeds from this offering available to us out of trust for our working capital requirements in searching for a business combination will be approximately \$500,000. We intend to use the proceeds for miscellaneous expenses such as paying fees to consultants to assist us with our search for a target business and for director and officer liability insurance premiums, with the balance being held in reserve in the event due diligence, legal, accounting and other expenses of structuring and negotiating business combinations exceed our estimates, as well as for reimbursement of any out-of-pocket expenses incurred by our sponsor, officers and directors in connection with activities on our behalf as described below.

The allocation of the net proceeds available to us outside of the trust account represents our best estimate of the intended uses of these funds. In the event that our assumptions prove to be inaccurate, we may reallocate some of such proceeds within the above described categories. If our estimate of the costs of undertaking in-depth due diligence and negotiating a business combination is less than the actual amount necessary to do so, we may be required to raise additional capital, the amount, availability and cost of which is currently unascertainable. In this event, we could seek such additional capital through loans or additional investments from members of our management team, but such members of our management team are not under any obligation to advance funds to, or invest in, us.

We may use substantially all of the net proceeds of this offering, including the funds held in the trust account, to acquire a target business and to pay our expenses relating thereto, including a fee payable to EarlyBirdCapital equal to 3.5% of the gross proceeds raised in this offering (exclusive of any applicable finders' fees which might become payable) upon consummation of our initial business combination for assisting us in connection with our initial business combination, as described under the section titled “*Underwriting — Business Combination Marketing Agreement.*” To the extent that our capital stock is used in whole or in part as consideration to effect a business combination, the proceeds held in the trust account which are not used to consummate a business combination will be disbursed to the combined company and will, along with any other net proceeds not expended, be used as working capital to finance the operations of the target business. Such working capital funds could be used in a variety of ways including continuing or expanding the target business' operations, for strategic acquisitions and for marketing, research and development of existing or new products.

To the extent we are unable to consummate a business combination, we will pay the costs of liquidation from the up to \$50,000 of interest that may be released to us from the trust account to pay for our liquidation and dissolution expenses. If such interest is insufficient, our sponsor has agreed to advance us the funds necessary to complete such liquidation and has agreed not to seek repayment of such expenses.

As of the date of this prospectus, our sponsor has loaned us an aggregate of \$125,000 which was used to pay a portion of the expenses of this offering referenced in the line items above for SEC registration fee, FINRA filing fee, the non-refundable portion of the Nasdaq listing fee and a portion of the legal and audit fees and expenses. The loan will be payable without interest on the consummation of this offering. The loan will be repaid out of the proceeds of this offering available to us for payment of offering expenses.

We believe that, upon consummation of this offering, we will have sufficient available funds (which includes amounts that may be released to us from the trust account) to operate for the next 21 months, assuming that a business combination is not consummated during that time. However, if necessary, in order to meet our working capital needs following the consummation of this offering, our sponsor, officers and directors may, but are not obligated to, loan us funds, from time to time or at any time, in whatever amount they deem reasonable in their sole discretion. Each loan would be evidenced by a promissory note. The notes would either be paid upon consummation of our initial business combination, without interest, or, at holder's discretion, up to \$1,500,000 of the notes may be converted into units at a price of \$10.00 per unit. The units would be identical to the private units. In the event that the initial business combination does not close, we may use a portion of the working capital held outside the trust account to repay such loaned amounts, but no proceeds from our trust account would be used for such repayment.

A public stockholder will be entitled to receive funds from the trust account (including interest earned on his, her or its portion of the trust account to the extent not previously released to us) only in the event of (i) our redemption of 100% of the outstanding public shares if we have not completed a business combination in the required time period, (ii) if that public stockholder converts such shares, or sells such shares to us in a tender offer, in connection with a business combination which we consummate or (iii) we seek to amend any provisions of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation that would affect our public stockholders' ability to convert or sell their shares to us in connection with a business combination as described herein or affect the substance or timing of our obligation to redeem 100% of our public shares if we do not complete a business combination within 21 months from the closing of this offering. This redemption right shall apply in the event of the approval of any such amendment to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation, whether proposed by our sponsor, any executive officer, director or director nominee, or any other person. In no other circumstances will a public stockholder have any right or interest of any kind to or in the trust account.

DIVIDEND POLICY

We have not paid any cash dividends on our common stock to date and do not intend to pay cash dividends prior to the completion of an initial business combination. The payment of cash dividends in the future will be dependent upon our revenues and earnings, if any, capital requirements and general financial condition subsequent to completion of a business combination. The payment of any dividends subsequent to a business combination will be within the discretion of our board of directors at such time. It is the present intention of our board of directors to retain all earnings, if any, for use in our business operations and, accordingly, our board of directors does not anticipate declaring any dividends in the foreseeable future. In addition, our board of directors is not currently contemplating and does not anticipate declaring any stock dividends in the foreseeable future, except if we increase the size of the offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, in which case we will effect a stock dividend immediately prior to the consummation of the offering in such amount as to maintain the ownership of our sponsor at 20.0% of our issued and outstanding shares of our common stock upon the consummation of this offering (excluding ownership of the private units and underlying securities). Further, if we incur any indebtedness, our ability to declare dividends may be limited by restrictive covenants we may agree to in connection therewith.

DILUTION

The difference between the public offering price per share, assuming no value is attributed to the warrants included in the units we are offering by this prospectus and the private warrants, and the pro forma net tangible book value per share after this offering constitutes the dilution to investors in this offering. Such calculation does not reflect any dilution associated with the sale and exercise of warrants, including the private warrants. Net tangible book value per share is determined by dividing our net tangible book value, which is our total tangible assets less total liabilities (including the value of shares of common stock which may be converted into cash or sold in a tender offer), by the number of outstanding shares of common stock.

At May 31, 2017, our net tangible book deficit was \$37,823, or approximately \$(0.01) per share of common stock. For purposes of the dilution calculation, in order to present the maximum estimated dilution as a result of this offering, we have assumed (i) the issuance of 0.1 of a share for each right outstanding, as such issuance will occur upon a business combination without the payment of additional consideration and (ii) the number of shares included in the units offered hereby will be deemed to be 11,000,000 (consisting of 10,000,000 shares of common stock included in the units we are offering by this prospectus and 1,000,000 shares for the outstanding rights), and the price per share in this offering will be deemed to be \$9.09. After giving effect to the sale of 10,000,000 shares of common stock included in the units we are offering by this prospectus, the sale of the private units and the deduction of underwriting commissions and estimated expenses of this offering, our pro forma net tangible book value at May 31, 2017 would have been \$5,000,002 or \$1.15 per share, representing an immediate increase in net tangible book value (as decreased by the value of the approximately 9,554,704 shares of common stock that may be converted to cash and assuming no exercise of the underwriters' over-allotment option) of \$1.16 per share to our sponsor and an immediate dilution of \$7.94 per share or 87.3% to our public stockholders not exercising their conversion rights. The decrease attributable to public shares subject to conversion is included in the calculation below at \$10.05 per share, as all public stockholders have the right to convert. The dilution to new investors if the underwriters exercise their over-allotment option in full would be an immediate dilution of \$8.03 per share or 87.3%.

The following table illustrates the dilution to the new investors on a per-share basis, assuming no value is attributed to the warrants included in the units and the private warrants:

Public offering price		\$	9.09
Net tangible book value before this offering	\$	(0.01)	
Increase attributable to public stockholders and private sales		<u>1.16</u>	
Pro forma net tangible book value after this offering			<u>1.15</u>
Dilution to public stockholders		<u>\$</u>	<u>7.94</u>
Percentage of dilution to public stockholders			87.3%

The following table sets forth information with respect to our existing stockholders and the public stockholders:

Number	Shares		Total Consideration		Average Price per Share
	Purchased	Percentage	Amount	Percentage	
Sponsor – founders' shares	2,500,000 ⁽¹⁾	18.0%	\$ 25,000	0.0%	\$ 0.01
Sponsor – private units	385,000 ⁽²⁾	2.8%	\$ 3,500,000	3.4%	\$ 9.09
Public stockholders	<u>11,000,000</u>	<u>79.2%</u>	<u>\$ 100,000,000</u>	<u>96.6%</u>	<u>\$ 9.09</u>
Total	13,885,000	100.0%	\$ 103,525,000	100.0%	

(1) Assumes the over-allotment option has not been exercised and an aggregate of 375,000 founders' shares have been forfeited as a result thereof.

(2) Assumes the over-allotment option has not been exercised and no additional private units have been sold.

The pro forma net tangible book value after the offering is calculated as follows:

Numerator:	
Net tangible book value before the offering	(37,823)
Net proceeds from this offering and private placement	101,000,000
Plus: Offering costs accrued for and paid in advance, excluded from tangible book value before this offering	62,500
Plus: Proceeds from sale of unit purchase option to underwriters	100
Less: Proceeds held in trust subject to conversion/tender	(96,024,775)
	<u>\$ 5,000,002</u>
Denominator:	
Shares of common stock outstanding prior to this offering	2,500,000 ⁽¹⁾
Shares of common stock included in the units offered	10,000,000
Shares of common stock underlying rights included in the units offered	1,000,000
Shares of common stock to be sold in private placement	350,000
Shares of common stock underlying rights to be sold in the private placement	35,000
Less: Shares subject to conversion/tender	(9,554,704)
	<u>4,330,296</u>

(1) Assumes the over-allotment option has not been exercised and an aggregate of 375,000 founders' shares have been forfeited as a result thereof.

CAPITALIZATION

The following table sets forth our capitalization at May 31, 2017 and as adjusted to give effect to the sale of our units and the private units and the application of the estimated net proceeds derived from the sale of such securities:

	May 31, 2017	
	Actual	As Adjusted ⁽¹⁾
Note payable to related party ⁽²⁾	\$ 125,000	\$ —
Common stock, \$.0001 par value, -0- and 9,554,704 shares which are subject to possible conversion/tender ⁽³⁾	—	96,024,775
Stockholders' equity:		
Preferred stock, \$.0001 par value, 1,000,000 shares authorized; none issued or outstanding	—	—
Common stock, \$.0001 par value, 30,000,000 shares authorized; 2,875,000 shares issued and outstanding, actual; 3,295,296 shares ⁽⁴⁾ issued and outstanding (excluding 9,554,704 shares subject to possible conversion/tender), as adjusted	288	330
Additional paid-in capital	24,712	4,999,995
Accumulated deficit	(323)	(323)
Total stockholders' equity:	24,677	5,000,002
Total capitalization	\$ 149,677	\$ 101,024,777

(1) Includes the \$3.5 million we will receive from the sale of the private units.

(2) Note payable to related party is a promissory note issued in the amount of \$125,000 in the aggregate to our sponsor. The note is non-interest bearing and is payable on the earlier to occur of June 1, 2018, the consummation of this offering, or the abandonment of this offering.

(3) Upon the consummation of our initial business combination, we will provide our stockholders (but not our sponsor, officers or directors) with the opportunity to convert or sell their public shares for cash equal to their pro rata share of the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account as of two business days prior to the consummation of the initial business combination, including interest not previously released to us (less taxes payable), subject to the limitations described herein whereby our net tangible assets will be maintained at a minimum of \$5,000,001.

(4) Assumes the over-allotment option has not been exercised and an aggregate of 375,000 founders' shares have been forfeited by our sponsor as a result thereof.

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

We were formed on May 9, 2017 for the purpose of entering into a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, recapitalization, reorganization or other similar business combination with one or more target businesses. Our efforts to identify a prospective target business will not be limited to a particular industry or geographic region although we intend to focus our search for target businesses in the energy or energy-related industries with an emphasis on opportunities in the upstream oil and gas industry in North America where our management team's networks and experience are suited. We intend to utilize cash derived from the proceeds of this offering, our securities, debt or a combination of cash, securities and debt, in effecting a business combination. The issuance of additional shares of common stock or preferred stock:

- may significantly reduce the equity interest of our stockholders;
- may subordinate the rights of holders of shares of common stock if we issue shares of preferred stock with rights senior to those afforded to our shares of common stock;
- will likely cause a change in control if a substantial number of our shares of common stock are issued, which may affect, among other things, our ability to use our net operating loss carry forwards, if any, and most likely will also result in the resignation or removal of our present officers and directors; and
- may adversely affect prevailing market prices for our securities.

Similarly, if we issue debt securities, it could result in:

- default and foreclosure on our assets if our operating revenues after a business combination are insufficient to pay our debt obligations;
- acceleration of our obligations to repay the indebtedness even if we have made all principal and interest payments when due if the debt security contains covenants that required the maintenance of certain financial ratios or reserves and we breach any such covenant without a waiver or renegotiation of that covenant;
- our immediate payment of all principal and accrued interest, if any, if the debt security is payable on demand; and
- our inability to obtain additional financing, if necessary, if the debt security contains covenants restricting our ability to obtain additional financing while such security is outstanding.

We have neither engaged in any operations nor generated any revenues to date. Our entire activity since inception has been to prepare for our proposed fundraising through an offering of our equity securities.

We are an emerging growth company as defined in the JOBS Act. As an emerging growth company, we have elected to delay the adoption of new or revised accounting standards that have different effective dates for public and private companies until those standards apply to private companies. As such, our financial statements may not be comparable to companies that comply with public company effective dates.

Liquidity and Capital Resources

As indicated in the accompanying financial statements, at May 31, 2017, we had \$87,500 in cash and a working capital deficiency of \$37,823. Further, we have incurred and expect to continue to incur significant costs in pursuit of our financing and acquisition plans. Management's plans to address this uncertainty through this offering are discussed above. We cannot assure you that our plans to raise capital or to consummate an initial business combination will be successful. These factors, among others, raise substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern.

Our liquidity needs have been satisfied to date through receipt of \$25,000 from the sale of the founders' shares, and a loan from our sponsor in an aggregate amount of \$125,000 that is more fully described below. We estimate that the net proceeds from (i) the sale of the units in this offering, after deducting offering expenses of approximately \$500,000 and underwriting discounts and commissions of \$2.0 million (or \$2.3 million if the over-allotment option is exercised in full) and (ii) the sale of the private units for a purchase price of \$3.5 million (or \$3.875 million if the over-allotment option is exercised in full) will be \$101.0 million (or \$116.075 million if the over-allotment option is exercised in full). Of this amount, \$100.5 million (or \$115.575 million if the over-allotment option is exercised in full) will be held in the trust account. The remaining \$500,000 will not be held in trust.

We may use substantially all of the net proceeds of this offering, including the funds held in the trust account, to acquire a target business and to pay our expenses relating thereto, including a fee payable to EarlyBirdCapital equal to 3.5% of the gross proceeds raised in this offering (exclusive of any applicable finders' fees which might become payable) upon consummation of our initial business combination for assisting us in connection with our initial business combination, as described under the section titled "*Underwriting — Business Combination Marketing Agreement*." To the extent that our capital stock is used in whole or in part as consideration to effect a business combination, the remaining proceeds held in the trust account as well as any other net proceeds not expended will be used as working capital to finance the operations of the target business. Such working capital funds could be used in a variety of ways including continuing or expanding the target business' operations, for strategic acquisitions and for marketing, research and development of existing or new products. Such funds could also be used to repay any operating expenses or finders' fees which we had incurred prior to the completion of our business combination if the funds available to us outside of the trust account were insufficient to cover such expenses.

We believe that, upon consummation of this offering, the approximate \$500,000 of net proceeds not held in the trust account, will be sufficient to allow us to operate for at least the next 21 months, assuming that a business combination is not consummated during that time. Over this time period, we will be using these funds for identifying and evaluating prospective acquisition candidates, performing business due diligence on prospective target businesses, traveling to and from the offices, plants or similar locations of prospective target businesses, reviewing corporate documents and material agreements of prospective target businesses, selecting the target business to acquire and structuring, negotiating and consummating the business combination. We anticipate that we will incur approximately:

- \$84,000 of expenses for the search for target businesses and for the legal, accounting and other third-party expenses attendant to the due diligence investigations, structuring and negotiating of a business combination;
- \$50,000 of expenses for the due diligence and investigation of a target business by our officers, directors and sponsor;
- \$100,000 of expenses in legal and accounting fees relating to our SEC reporting obligations;
- \$210,000 for the payment of the administrative fee to our sponsor (of \$10,000 per month for up to 21 months); and
- \$56,000 for general working capital that will be used for miscellaneous expenses and reserves, including director and officer liability insurance premiums.

If our estimates of the costs of undertaking in-depth due diligence and negotiating an initial business combination is less than the actual amount necessary to do so, or we earn less interest on the funds held in the trust account than anticipated, we may have insufficient funds available to operate our business prior to our initial business combination. Moreover, we may need to obtain additional financing either to consummate our initial business combination or because we become obligated to redeem a significant number of our public shares upon consummation of our initial business combination, in which case we may issue additional securities or incur debt in connection with such business combination. We do not have a maximum debt leverage ratio or a policy with respect to how much debt we may incur. The amount of debt we will be willing to incur will depend on the facts and circumstances of the proposed business combination and market conditions at the time of the potential business combination. At this time, we are not party to any arrangement or understanding with any third party with respect to raising additional funds through the sale of our securities or the incurrence of debt. Subject to compliance with applicable securities laws, we would only consummate such financing simultaneously with the consummation of our initial business combination. In the current economic environment, it has become especially difficult to obtain acquisition financing. Following our initial business combination, if cash on hand is insufficient, we may need to obtain additional financing in order to meet our obligations.

Related Party Transactions

As of the date of this prospectus, our sponsor has loaned an aggregate of \$125,000 to us, on a non-interest bearing basis, for payment of offering expenses on our behalf. The loan will be payable without interest on the earlier to occur of June 1, 2018, the consummation of this offering, or the abandonment of this offering. If the offering is consummated, the loan will be repaid out of the proceeds of this offering not being placed in trust.

We are obligated, commencing on the date of this prospectus, to pay our sponsor a monthly fee of \$10,000 for general and administrative services.

Our sponsor has committed that it will purchase an aggregate of 350,000 private units at \$10.00 per private unit (for a total purchase price of \$3,500,000) from us. This purchase will take place on a private placement basis simultaneously with the consummation of this offering. Our sponsor has also agreed that if the over-allotment option is exercised by the underwriters in full or in part, it will purchase from us an additional number of private units (up to a maximum of 37,500 private units) at a price of \$10.00 per private unit necessary to maintain in the trust account \$10.05 per unit sold to the public in this offering. These additional private units will be purchased in a private placement that will occur simultaneously with the purchase of units resulting from the exercise of the over-allotment option.

We do not believe we will need to raise additional funds following this offering in order to meet the expenditures required for operating our business. However, in order to finance transaction costs in connection with an intended initial business combination, our sponsor, officers, directors or their affiliates may, but are not obligated to, loan us funds as may be required. If we consummate an initial business combination, we would repay such loaned amounts. In the event that the initial business combination does not close, we may use a portion of the working capital held outside the trust account to repay such loaned amounts, but no proceeds from our trust account would be used for such repayment. Up to \$1,500,000 of such loans may be convertible into units of the post business combination entity at a price of \$10.00 per unit at the option of the lender. The units would be identical to the private units.

Controls and Procedures

We are not currently required to maintain an effective system of internal controls as defined by Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. We will be required to comply with the internal control requirements of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2018. As of the date of this prospectus, we have not completed an assessment, nor have our auditors tested our systems, of internal controls. We expect to assess the internal controls of our target business or businesses prior to the completion of our initial business combination and, if necessary, to implement and test additional controls as we may determine are necessary in order to state that we maintain an effective system of internal controls. A target business may not be in compliance with the provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act regarding the adequacy of internal controls. Target businesses we may consider for a business combination may have internal controls that need improvement in areas such as:

- staffing for financial, accounting and external reporting areas, including segregation of duties;
- reconciliation of accounts;
- proper recording of expenses and liabilities in the period to which they relate;
- evidence of internal review and approval of accounting transactions;
- documentation of processes, assumptions and conclusions underlying significant estimates; and
- documentation of accounting policies and procedures.

Because it will take time, management involvement and perhaps outside resources to determine what internal control improvements are necessary for us to meet regulatory requirements and market expectations for our operation of a target business, we may incur significant expense in meeting our public reporting responsibilities, particularly in the areas of designing, enhancing, or remediating internal and disclosure controls. Doing so effectively may also take longer than we expect, thus increasing our exposure to financial fraud or erroneous financing reporting.

Once our management's report on internal controls is complete, we will retain our independent auditors to audit and render an opinion on such report when required by Section 404. The independent auditors may identify additional issues concerning a target business's internal controls while performing their audit of internal control over financial reporting.

Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk

The net proceeds of this offering, including amounts in the trust account, will be invested in United States "government securities" within the meaning of Section 2(a)(16) of the Investment Company Act having a maturity of 180 days or less, or in money market funds meeting certain conditions under Rule 2a-7 promulgated under the Investment Company Act which invest only in direct U.S. government treasury obligations. Due to the short-term nature of these investments, we believe there will be no associated material exposure to interest rate risk.

Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements; Commitments and Contractual Obligations; Quarterly Results

As of the date of this prospectus, we did not have any off-balance sheet arrangements as defined in Item 303(a)(4)(ii) of Regulation S-K and did not have any commitments or contractual obligations. No unaudited quarterly operating data is included in this prospectus as we have conducted no operations to date.

PROPOSED BUSINESS

Introduction

We are a Delaware blank check company incorporated on May 9, 2017 formed for the purpose of entering into a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, recapitalization, reorganization or other similar business combination with one or more target businesses.

We intend to focus our search on businesses in the energy or energy-related industries with an emphasis on opportunities in the upstream oil and gas industry in North America where our management team's networks and experience are suited although our efforts to identify a prospective target business will not be limited to a particular industry or geographic region. Although we anticipate acquiring a target business that is an operating business, we are not obligated to do so and may determine to merge with or acquire a company with no operating history if the terms of the transaction are determined by us to be favorable to our public stockholders and the target business has a fair market value of at least 80% of the assets held in the trust account (excluding taxes payable on the income earned on the trust account) at the time of the agreement to enter into the initial business combination.

We intend to identify and acquire a business that could benefit from a hands-on owner with extensive experience in the upstream oil and gas industry in North America and that presents potential for an attractive risk-adjusted return profile under our stewardship. Even fundamentally sound companies can often under-perform their potential due to underinvestment, a temporary period of dislocation in the markets in which they operate, over-levered capital structures, excessive cost structures, incomplete management teams and/or inappropriate business strategies. Our management team has extensive experience in identifying and executing such full-potential acquisitions across the energy industries. In addition, our team has significant hands-on experience working with private companies in preparing for and executing an initial public offering and serving as active owners and directors by working closely with these companies to continue their transformations and help create value in the public markets.

We believe that our management team is well positioned to identify attractive risk-adjusted returns in the marketplace and that its contacts and transaction sources, ranging from industry executives, private owners, private equity funds, and investment bankers will enable us to pursue a broad range of opportunities. Our management believes that its ability to identify and implement value creation initiatives will remain central to its differentiated acquisition strategy.

We will seek to capitalize on the significant investing experience and contacts of our officers and directors in consummating an initial business combination. Kenneth DeCubellis, our chairman of the board and chief executive officer, has over 30 years of experience, primarily in the oil and gas and other energy-related industries, including 10 years at Exxon Mobil Corp. Mr. DeCubellis has served as chief executive officer of our sponsor since November 2011. Our management team has significant access to both publicly available and proprietary business combination opportunities and have collectively bid on over \$2.4 billion of opportunities since June 2015.

Acquisition Criteria

We have identified the following general criteria and guidelines that we believe are important in evaluating prospective targets. We will use these criteria and guidelines in evaluating acquisition opportunities, but we may decide to enter into our initial business combination with a target that does not meet these criteria and guidelines. We intend to acquire target businesses that we believe:

- are fundamentally sound but that we believe can achieve better results by leveraging the operating and financial experience of our sponsor and management team;
- can utilize the extensive networks and insights that our management team has built in the energy industry;
- are at an inflection point, such as requiring additional management expertise, are able to innovate through new operational techniques, or where we believe we can drive improved financial performance;
- exhibit unrecognized value or other characteristics, desirable returns on capital, and a need for capital to achieve the company's growth strategy, that we believe have been misvalued by the marketplace based on our analysis and due diligence review; and
- will offer an attractive risk-adjusted return for our stockholders.

We will seek to acquire the target on terms and in a manner that leverages our management team's experience investing within the energy industry. Potential upside from growth in the target business and an improved capital structure will be weighed against any identified downside risks.

These criteria are not intended to be exhaustive. Any evaluation relating to the merits of a particular initial business combination may be based, to the extent relevant, on these general guidelines as well as other considerations, factors and criteria that our management may deem relevant. In the event that we decide to enter into our initial business combination with a target business that does not meet the above criteria and guidelines, we will disclose that the target business does not meet the above criteria in our stockholder communications related to our initial business combination, which, as discussed in this prospectus, would be in the form of proxy solicitation or tender offer materials that we would file with the SEC.

Competitive Strengths

We believe we have the following competitive strengths:

Status as a public company

We believe our structure will make us an attractive business combination partner to target businesses. As an existing public company, we offer a target business an alternative to the traditional initial public offering through a merger or other business combination. In this situation, the owners of the target business would exchange their shares of stock in the target business for shares of our stock or for a combination of shares of our stock and cash, allowing us to tailor the consideration to the specific needs of the sellers. We believe target businesses might find this method a more certain and cost effective method to becoming a public company than the typical initial public offering. In a typical initial public offering, there are additional expenses incurred in marketing, roadshow and public reporting efforts that will likely not be present to the same extent in connection with a business combination with us. Furthermore, once the business combination is consummated, the target business will have effectively become public, whereas an initial public offering is always subject to the underwriters' ability to complete the offering, as well as general market conditions, that could prevent the offering from occurring. Once public, we believe the target business would then have greater access to capital and an additional means of providing management incentives consistent with stockholders' interests than it would have as a privately-held company. It can offer further benefits by augmenting a company's profile among potential new customers and vendors and aid in attracting talented employees.

While we believe that our status as a public company will make us an attractive business partner, some potential target businesses may view the inherent limitations in our status as a blank check company as a deterrent and may prefer to effect a business combination with a more established entity or with a private company. These inherent limitations include limitations on our available financial resources, which may be inferior to those of other entities pursuing the acquisition of similar target businesses; the requirement that we seek shareholder approval of a business combination, which may delay the consummation of a transaction; and the existence of our outstanding rights and warrants, which may represent a source of future dilution.

Financial position

With funds in the trust account of \$100.5 million (or \$115.575 million if the over-allotment option is exercised in full) available to use for a business combination, we offer a target business a variety of options such as providing the owners of a target business with shares in a public company and a public means to sell such shares, providing capital for the potential growth and expansion of its operations or strengthening its balance sheet by reducing its debt ratio. Because we are able to consummate our initial business combination using our cash, debt or equity securities, or a combination of the foregoing, we have the flexibility to use the most efficient combination that will allow us to tailor the consideration to be paid to the target business to fit its needs and desires. However, since we have no specific business combination under consideration, we have not taken any steps to secure third party financing and there can be no assurance that it will be available to us.

Effecting a Business Combination

General

We are not presently engaged in, and we will not engage in, any substantive commercial business for an indefinite period of time following this offering. We intend to utilize cash derived from the proceeds of this offering and the private placement of private units, our capital stock, debt or a combination of these in effecting a business combination which has not yet been identified. Accordingly, investors in this offering are investing without first having an opportunity to evaluate the specific merits or risks of any one or more business combinations. A business combination may involve the acquisition of, or merger with, a company which does not need substantial additional capital but which desires to establish a public trading market for its shares, while avoiding what it may deem to be adverse consequences of undertaking a public offering itself. These include time delays, significant expense, loss of voting control and compliance with various federal and state securities laws. In the alternative, we may seek to consummate a business combination with a company that may be financially unstable or in its early stages of development or growth. While we may seek to effect simultaneous business combinations with more than one target business, we will probably have the ability, as a result of our limited resources, to effect only a single business combination.

We Have Not Identified a Target Business

To date, we have not selected any target business on which to concentrate our search for a business combination. None of our sponsor, officers, directors, promoters and other affiliates has engaged in any substantive discussions on our behalf with representatives of other companies regarding the possibility of a potential merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition or other similar business combination with us. Additionally, we have not engaged or retained any agent or other representative to identify or locate such companies. As a result, we cannot assure you that we will be able to locate a target business or that we will be able to engage in a business combination with a target business on favorable terms or at all.

We will have virtually unrestricted flexibility in identifying and selecting a prospective acquisition candidate. We have not established any other specific attributes or criteria (financial or otherwise) for prospective target businesses. Accordingly, there is no basis for investors in this offering to evaluate the possible merits or risks of the target business with which we may ultimately complete a business combination. To the extent we effect a business combination with a financially unstable company or an entity in its early stage of development or growth, including entities without established records of sales or earnings, we may be affected by numerous risks inherent in the business and operations of financially unstable and early stage or potential emerging growth companies. Although our management will endeavor to evaluate the risks inherent in a particular target business, we cannot assure you that we will properly ascertain or assess all significant risk factors.

Sources of Target Businesses

While we have not yet identified any acquisition candidates, we believe based on our management's business knowledge and past experience that there are numerous acquisition candidates. We expect that our principal means of identifying potential target businesses will be through the extensive contacts and relationships of our sponsor, officers and directors. While our officers and directors are not required to commit any specific amount of time in identifying or performing due diligence on potential target businesses, our officers and directors believe that the relationships they have developed over their careers and their access to our sponsor's contacts and resources will generate a number of potential business combination opportunities that will warrant further investigation. We also anticipate that target business candidates will be brought to our attention from various unaffiliated sources, including investment bankers, venture capital funds, private equity funds, leveraged buyout funds, management buyout funds and other members of the financial community. Target businesses may be brought to our attention by such unaffiliated sources as a result of being solicited by us through calls or mailings. These sources may also introduce us to target businesses they think we may be interested in on an unsolicited basis, since many of these sources will have read this prospectus and know what types of businesses we are targeting. Our sponsor, officers and directors, as well as their affiliates, may also bring to our attention target business candidates that they become aware of through their business contacts as a result of formal or informal inquiries or discussions they may have, as well as attending trade shows or conventions. They must present to us all target business opportunities that have a fair market value of at least 80% of the assets held in the trust account (excluding deferred underwriting commissions and taxes payable on the income accrued in the trust account) at the time of the agreement to enter into the initial business combination, subject to any pre-existing fiduciary or contractual obligations. While we do not presently anticipate engaging the services of professional firms or other individuals that specialize in business acquisitions on any formal basis (other than EarlyBirdCapital as described elsewhere in this prospectus), we may engage these firms or other individuals in the future, in which event we may pay a finder's fee, consulting fee or other compensation to be determined in an arm's length negotiation based on the terms of the transaction. In no event, however, will our sponsor, officers, directors or their respective affiliates be paid any finder's fee, consulting fee or other compensation prior to, or for any services they render in order to effectuate, the consummation of an initial business combination (regardless of the type of transaction that it is) other than the \$10,000 administrative services fee, the repayment of the \$125,000 loan from sponsor and reimbursement of any out-of-pocket expenses. Our audit committee will review and approve all reimbursements and payments made to our sponsor, officers, directors or our or their respective affiliates, with any interested director abstaining from such review and approval. We have no present intention to enter into a business combination with a target business that is affiliated with any of our officers, directors or sponsor. However, we are not restricted from entering into any such transactions and may do so if (i) such transaction is approved by a majority of our disinterested independent directors and (ii) we obtain an opinion from an independent investment banking firm, or another independent entity that commonly renders valuation opinions on the type of target business we are seeking to acquire, that the business combination is fair to our unaffiliated stockholders from a financial point of view.

Selection of a Target Business and Structuring of a Business Combination

Subject to the limitations that a target business have a fair market value of at least 80% of the balance in the trust account (excluding taxes payable on the income earned on the trust account) at the time of the execution of a definitive agreement for our initial business combination, as described below in more detail, and that we must acquire a controlling interest in the target business, our management will have virtually unrestricted flexibility in identifying and selecting a prospective target business. Except for the general criteria and guidelines set forth above under the caption “*Acquisition Criteria*,” we have not established any specific attributes or criteria (financial or otherwise) for prospective target businesses. In evaluating a prospective target business, our management may consider a variety of factors, including one or more of the following:

- financial condition and results of operation;
- growth potential;
- brand recognition and potential;
- experience and skill of management and availability of additional personnel;
- capital requirements;
- competitive position;
- barriers to entry;
- stage of development of the products, processes or services;
- existing distribution and potential for expansion;
- degree of current or potential market acceptance of the products, processes or services;
- proprietary aspects of products and the extent of intellectual property or other protection for products or formulas;
- impact of regulation on the business;
- regulatory environment of the industry;
- costs associated with effecting the business combination;
- industry leadership, sustainability of market share and attractiveness of market industries in which a target business participates; and
- macro competitive dynamics in the industry within which the company competes.

These criteria are not intended to be exhaustive. Any evaluation relating to the merits of a particular business combination will be based, to the extent relevant, on the above factors as well as other considerations deemed relevant by our management in effecting a business combination consistent with our business objective. In evaluating a prospective target business, we will conduct an extensive due diligence review which will encompass, among other things, meetings with incumbent management and inspection of facilities, as well as review of financial and other information which is made available to us. This due diligence review will be conducted either by our management or by unaffiliated third parties we may engage, although we have no current intention to engage any such third parties.

The time and costs required to select and evaluate a target business and to structure and complete the business combination cannot presently be ascertained with any degree of certainty. Any costs incurred with respect to the identification and evaluation of a prospective target business with which a business combination is not ultimately completed will result in a loss to us and reduce the amount of capital available to otherwise complete a business combination.

Fair Market Value of Target Business

The target business or businesses that we acquire must collectively have a fair market value equal to at least 80% of the balance of the funds in the trust account (excluding taxes payable on the income earned on the trust account) at the time of the execution of a definitive agreement for our initial business combination, although we may acquire a target business whose fair market value significantly exceeds 80% of the trust account balance.

We currently anticipate structuring a business combination to acquire 100% of the equity interests or assets of the target business or businesses. We may, however, structure our initial business combination where we merge directly with the target business or where we acquire less than 100% of such interests or assets of the target business in order to meet certain objectives of the target management team or shareholders or for other reasons, but we will only complete such business combination if the post-transaction company owns or acquires 50% or more of the outstanding voting securities of the target or otherwise acquires a controlling interest in the target sufficient for it not to be required to register as an investment company under the Investment Company Act. Even if the post-transaction company owns or acquires 50% or more of the voting securities of the target, our stockholders prior to the business combination may collectively own a minority interest in the post-transaction company, depending on valuations ascribed to the target and us in the business combination transaction. For example, we could pursue a transaction in which we issue a substantial number of new shares in exchange for all of the outstanding capital stock of a target. In this case, we could acquire a 100% controlling interest in the target; however, as a result of the issuance of a substantial number of new shares, our stockholders immediately prior to our initial business combination could own less than a majority of our outstanding shares subsequent to our initial business combination. If less than 100% of the equity interests or assets of a target business or businesses are owned or acquired by the post-transaction company, the portion of such business or businesses that is owned or acquired is what will be valued for purposes of the 80% of trust account balance test. In order to consummate such an acquisition, we may issue a significant amount of our debt or equity securities to the sellers of such businesses and/or seek to raise additional funds through a private offering of debt or equity securities. Since we have no specific business combination under consideration, we have not entered into any such fund raising arrangement and have no current intention of doing so. The fair market value of the target will be determined by our board of directors based upon one or more standards generally accepted by the financial community (such as actual and potential sales, earnings, cash flow and/or book value). The proxy solicitation materials or tender offer documents used by us in connection with any proposed transaction will provide public stockholders with our analysis of the fair market value of the target business, as well as the basis for our determinations. If our board is not able to independently determine that the target business has a sufficient fair market value, we will obtain an opinion from an unaffiliated, independent investment banking firm, or another independent entity that commonly renders valuation opinions on the type of target business we are seeking to acquire, with respect to the satisfaction of such criteria.

We will not be required to obtain an opinion from an investment banking firm as to the fair market value if our board of directors independently determines that the target business complies with the 80% threshold.

Lack of Business Diversification

We may seek to effect a business combination with more than one target business, and there is no required minimum valuation standard for any single target at the time of such acquisition. We expect to complete only a single business combination, although this process may entail the simultaneous acquisitions of several operating businesses. Therefore, at least initially, the prospects for our success may be entirely dependent upon the future performance of a single business operation. Unlike other entities which may have the resources to complete several business combinations of entities operating in multiple industries or multiple areas of a single industry, it is probable that we will not have the resources to diversify our operations or benefit from the possible spreading of risks or offsetting of losses. By consummating a business combination with only a single entity, our lack of diversification may:

- subject us to numerous economic, competitive and regulatory developments, any or all of which may have a substantial adverse impact upon the particular industry in which we may operate subsequent to a business combination, and
- result in our dependency upon the performance of a single operating business or the development or market acceptance of a single or limited number of products, processes or services.

If we determine to simultaneously acquire several businesses and such businesses are owned by different sellers, we will need for each of such sellers to agree that our purchase of its business is contingent on the simultaneous closings of the other acquisitions, which may make it more difficult for us, and delay our ability, to complete the business combination. With multiple acquisitions, we could also face additional risks, including additional burdens and costs with respect to possible multiple negotiations and due diligence investigations (if there are multiple sellers) and the additional risks associated with the subsequent assimilation of the operations and services or products of the acquired companies in a single operating business.

Limited Ability to Evaluate the Target Business' Management

Although we intend to scrutinize the management of a prospective target business when evaluating the desirability of effecting a business combination, we cannot assure you that our assessment of the target business' management will prove to be correct. In addition, we cannot assure you that the future management will have the necessary skills, qualifications or abilities to manage a public company. Furthermore, the future role of our officers and directors, if any, in the target business following a business combination cannot presently be stated with any certainty. While it is possible that some of our key personnel will remain associated in senior management or advisory positions with us following a business combination, it is unlikely that they will devote their full time efforts to our affairs subsequent to a business combination. Moreover, they would only be able to remain with the company after the consummation of a business combination if they are able to negotiate employment or consulting agreements in connection with the business combination. Such negotiations would take place simultaneously with the negotiation of the business combination and could provide for them to receive compensation in the form of cash payments and/or our securities for services they would render to the company after the consummation of the business combination. While the personal and financial interests of our key personnel may influence their motivation in identifying and selecting a target business, their ability to remain with the company after the consummation of a business combination will not be the determining factor in our decision as to whether or not we will proceed with any potential business combination. Additionally, we cannot assure you that our officers and directors will have significant experience or knowledge relating to the operations of the particular target business.

Following a business combination, we may seek to recruit additional managers to supplement the incumbent management of the target business. We cannot assure you that we will have the ability to recruit additional managers, or that any such additional managers we do recruit will have the requisite skills, knowledge or experience necessary to enhance the incumbent management.

Stockholders May Not Have the Ability to Approve an Initial Business Combination

In connection with any proposed business combination, we will either (1) seek stockholder approval of our initial business combination at a meeting called for such purpose at which stockholders may seek to convert their shares, regardless of whether they vote for or against the proposed business combination, into their pro rata share of the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account (net of taxes payable), or (2) provide our stockholders with the opportunity to sell their shares to us by means of a tender offer (and thereby avoid the need for a stockholder vote) for an amount equal to their pro rata share of the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account (net of taxes payable), in each case subject to the limitations described herein. If we determine to engage in a tender offer, such tender offer will be structured so that each stockholder may tender all of his, her or its shares rather than some pro rata portion of his, her or its shares. The decision as to whether we will seek stockholder approval of a proposed business combination or will allow stockholders to sell their shares to us in a tender offer will be made by us, solely in our discretion, and will be based on a variety of factors such as the timing of the transaction and whether the terms of the transaction would otherwise require us to seek stockholder approval. Unlike other blank check companies which require stockholder votes and conduct proxy solicitations in conjunction with their initial business combinations and related conversions of public shares for cash upon consummation of such initial business combination even when a vote is not required by law, we will have the flexibility to avoid such stockholder vote and allow our stockholders to sell their shares pursuant to Rule 13e-4 and Regulation 14E of the Exchange Act which regulate issuer tender offers. In that case, we will file tender offer documents with the SEC which will contain substantially the same financial and other information about the initial business combination as is required under the SEC's proxy rules. We will consummate our initial business combination only if we have net tangible assets of at least \$5,000,001 upon such consummation and, if we seek stockholder approval, a majority of the outstanding shares of common stock voted are voted in favor of the business combination.

We chose our net tangible asset threshold of \$5,000,001 to ensure that we would avoid being subject to Rule 419 promulgated under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended. However, if we seek to consummate an initial business combination with a target business that imposes any type of working capital closing condition or requires us to have a minimum amount of funds available from the trust account upon consummation of such initial business combination, we may need to have more than \$5,000,001 in net tangible assets upon consummation and this may force us to seek third party financing which may not be available on terms acceptable to us or at all. As a result, we may not be able to consummate such initial business combination and we may not be able to locate another suitable target within the applicable time period, if at all. Public stockholders may therefore have to wait 21 months from the closing of this offering in order to be able to receive a pro rata share of the trust account.

Our sponsor and our officers and directors have agreed (1) to vote any shares of common stock owned by them in favor of any proposed business combination, (2) not to convert any shares of common stock in connection with a stockholder vote to approve a proposed initial business combination and (3) not sell any shares of common stock in any tender in connection with a proposed initial business combination.

None of our officers, directors, sponsor or their affiliates has indicated any intention to purchase units or shares of common stock in this offering or from persons in the open market or in private transactions. However, if we hold a meeting to approve a proposed business combination and a significant number of stockholders vote, or indicate an intention to vote, against such proposed business combination, our officers, directors, sponsor or their affiliates could make such purchases in the open market or in private transactions in order to influence the vote. Notwithstanding the foregoing, our officers, directors, sponsor and their affiliates will not make purchases of shares of common stock if the purchases would violate Section 9(a)(2) or Rule 10b-5 of the Exchange Act, which are rules designed to stop potential manipulation of a company's stock.

Conversion Rights

At any meeting called to approve an initial business combination, public stockholders may seek to convert their shares, regardless of whether they vote for or against the proposed business combination, into their pro rata share of the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account as of two business days prior to the consummation of the initial business combination, less any taxes then due but not yet paid. Alternatively, we may provide our public stockholders with the opportunity to sell their shares of our common stock to us through a tender offer (and thereby avoid the need for a stockholder vote) for an amount equal to their pro rata share of the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account, less any taxes then due but not yet paid.

Our sponsor and our officers and directors will not have conversion rights with respect to any shares of common stock owned by them, directly or indirectly, whether acquired prior to this offering or purchased by them in this offering or in the aftermarket.

We may require public stockholders, whether they are a record holder or hold their shares in “street name,” to either (i) tender their certificates to our transfer agent or (ii) deliver their shares to the transfer agent electronically using Depository Trust Company’s DWAC (Deposit/Withdrawal At Custodian) System, at the holder’s option, in each case prior to a date set forth in the proxy materials sent in connection with the proposal to approve the business combination.

There is a nominal cost associated with the above-referenced delivery process and the act of certificating the shares or delivering them through the DWAC System. The transfer agent will typically charge the tendering broker \$45.00 and it would be up to the broker whether or not to pass this cost on to the holder. However, this fee would be incurred regardless of whether or not we require holders seeking to exercise conversion rights. The need to deliver shares is a requirement of exercising conversion rights regardless of the timing of when such delivery must be effectuated. However, in the event we require stockholders seeking to exercise conversion rights prior to the consummation of the proposed business combination and the proposed business combination is not consummated this may result in an increased cost to stockholders.

Any proxy solicitation materials we furnish to stockholders in connection with a vote for any proposed business combination will indicate whether we are requiring stockholders to satisfy such certification and delivery requirements. Accordingly, a stockholder would have from the time the stockholder received our proxy statement up until the vote on the proposal to approve the business combination to deliver his shares if he wishes to seek to exercise his conversion rights. This time period varies depending on the specific facts of each transaction. However, as the delivery process can be accomplished by the stockholder, whether or not he is a record holder or his shares are held in “street name,” in a matter of hours by simply contacting the transfer agent or his broker and requesting delivery of his shares through the DWAC System, we believe this time period is sufficient for an average investor. However, we cannot assure you of this fact. Please see the risk factor titled “*In connection with any stockholder meeting called to approve a proposed initial business combination, we may require stockholders who wish to convert their shares in connection with a proposed business combination to comply with specific requirements for conversion that may make it more difficult for them to exercise their conversion rights prior to the deadline for exercising their rights*” for further information on the risks of failing to comply with these requirements.

The foregoing is different from the procedures historically used by some blank check companies. Traditionally, in order to perfect conversion rights in connection with a blank check company’s business combination, the company would distribute proxy materials for the stockholders’ vote on an initial business combination, and a holder could simply vote against a proposed business combination and check a box on the proxy card indicating such holder was seeking to exercise his conversion rights. After the business combination was approved, the company would contact such stockholder to arrange for him to deliver his certificate to verify ownership. As a result, the stockholder then had an “option window” after the consummation of the business combination during which he could monitor the price of the company’s stock in the market. If the price rose above the conversion price, he could sell his shares in the open market before actually delivering his shares to the company for cancellation. As a result, the conversion rights, to which stockholders were aware they needed to commit before the stockholder meeting, would become a “continuing” right surviving past the consummation of the business combination until the holder delivered its certificate. The requirement for physical or electronic delivery prior to the meeting ensures that a holder’s election to convert his shares is irrevocable once the business combination is approved.

Any request to convert such shares once made, may be withdrawn at any time up to the vote on the proposed business combination or the expiration of the tender offer. Furthermore, if a holder of a public share of common stock delivered his certificate in connection with an election of their conversion and subsequently decides prior to the applicable date not to elect to exercise such rights, he may simply request that the transfer agent return the certificate (physically or electronically).

If the initial business combination is not approved or completed for any reason, then our public stockholders who elected to exercise their conversion rights would not be entitled to convert their shares for the applicable pro rata share of the trust account as of two business days prior to the consummation of the initial business combination. In such case, we will promptly return any shares delivered by public holders.

Liquidation if No Business Combination

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides that we will have only 21 months from the closing of this offering to complete an initial business combination. If we have not completed an initial business combination by such date, we will (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but not more than ten business days thereafter, redeem 100% of the outstanding public shares, at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account, including any interest not previously released to us but net of taxes payable, divided by the number of then outstanding public shares, which redemption will completely extinguish public stockholders' rights as stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidation distributions, if any), subject to applicable law, and (iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of our remaining stockholders and our board of directors, dissolve and liquidate, subject (in the case of (ii) and (iii) above) to our obligations under Delaware law to provide for claims of creditors and the requirements of other applicable law.

Our sponsor, officers and directors have agreed that they will not propose any amendment to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation that would affect our public stockholders' ability to convert or sell their shares to us in connection with a business combination as described herein or affect the substance or timing of our obligation to redeem 100% of our public shares if we do not complete a business combination within 21 months from the closing of this offering unless we provide our public stockholders with the opportunity to convert their shares of common stock upon such approval at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account, including interest not previously released to us but net of franchise and income taxes payable, divided by the number of then outstanding public shares. This redemption right shall apply in the event of the approval of any such amendment, whether proposed by our sponsor, any executive officer, director or director nominee, or any other person.

Under the Delaware General Corporation Law, stockholders may be held liable for claims by third parties against a corporation to the extent of distributions received by them in a dissolution. The pro rata portion of our trust account distributed to our public stockholders upon the redemption of 100% of our outstanding public shares in the event we do not complete our initial business combination within the required time period may be considered a liquidation distribution under Delaware law. If the corporation complies with certain procedures set forth in Section 280 of the Delaware General Corporation Law intended to ensure that it makes reasonable provision for all claims against it, including a 60-day notice period during which any third-party claims can be brought against the corporation, a 90-day period during which the corporation may reject any claims brought, and an additional 150-day waiting period before any liquidating distributions are made to stockholders, any liability of stockholders with respect to a liquidating distribution is limited to the lesser of such stockholder's pro rata share of the claim or the amount distributed to the stockholder, and any liability of the stockholder would be barred after the third anniversary of the dissolution.

Furthermore, if the pro rata portion of our trust account distributed to our public stockholders upon the redemption of 100% of our public shares in the event we do not complete our initial business combination within the required time period is not considered a liquidation distribution under Delaware law and such redemption distribution is deemed to be unlawful, then pursuant to Section 174 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, the statute of limitations for claims of creditors could then be six years after the unlawful redemption distribution, instead of three years, as in the case of a liquidation distribution. If we are unable to complete a business combination within the prescribed time frame, we will (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but not more than ten business days thereafter, redeem 100% of the outstanding public shares, at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account, including any interest but net of franchise and income taxes payable, divided by the number of then outstanding public shares, which redemption will completely extinguish public stockholders' rights as stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidation distributions, if any), subject to applicable law and (iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of our remaining stockholders and our board of directors, dissolve and liquidate, subject (in the case of (ii) and (iii) above) to our obligations under Delaware law to provide for claims of creditors and the requirements of other applicable law. Accordingly, it is our intention to redeem our public shares as soon as reasonably possible following our 21st month, and, therefore, we do not intend to comply with those procedures. As such, our stockholders could potentially be liable for any claims to the extent of distributions received by them (but no more) and any liability of our stockholders may extend well beyond the third anniversary of such date.

Because we will not be complying with Section 280 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, Section 281(b) of the Delaware General Corporation Law requires us to adopt a plan, based on facts known to us at such time that will provide for our payment of all existing and pending claims or claims that may be potentially brought against us within the subsequent ten years. However, because we are a blank check company, rather than an operating company, and our operations will be limited to searching for prospective target businesses to acquire, the only likely claims to arise would be from our vendors (such as lawyers, investment bankers, etc.) or prospective target businesses.

We are required to have all third parties (including any vendors or other entities we engage after this offering) and any prospective target businesses enter into agreements with us waiving any right, title, interest or claim of any kind they may have in or to any monies held in the trust account. As a result, the claims that could be made against us will be limited, thereby lessening the likelihood that any claim would result in any liability extending to the trust. We therefore believe that any necessary provision for creditors will be reduced and should not have a significant impact on our ability to distribute the funds in the trust account to our public stockholders. Nevertheless, we cannot assure you of this fact as there is no guarantee that vendors, service providers and prospective target businesses will execute such agreements. Nor is there any guarantee that, even if they execute such agreements with us, they will not seek recourse against the trust account. Our sponsor has agreed that it will be liable to ensure that the proceeds in the trust account are not reduced below \$10.05 per share by the claims of target businesses or claims of vendors or other entities that are owed money by us for services rendered or contracted for or products sold to us, but we cannot assure you that it will be able to satisfy its indemnification obligations if it is required to do so. Additionally, the agreement our sponsor entered into specifically provides for two exceptions to the indemnity it has given: it will have no liability (1) as to any claimed amounts owed to a target business or vendor or other entity who has executed an agreement with us waiving any right, title, interest or claim of any kind they may have in or to any monies held in the trust account, or (2) as to any claims for indemnification by the underwriters of this offering against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act. As a result, if we liquidate, the per-share distribution from the trust account could be less than \$10.05 due to claims or potential claims of creditors. We will distribute to all of our public stockholders, in proportion to their respective equity interests, an aggregate sum equal to the amount in the trust account, inclusive of any interest, plus any remaining net assets (subject to our obligations under Delaware law to provide for claims of creditors as described below).

We anticipate notifying the trustee of the trust account to begin liquidating such assets promptly after such date and anticipate it will take no more than 10 business days to effectuate such distribution. The holders of the founders' shares have waived their rights to participate in any liquidation distribution with respect to such founders' shares. There will be no distribution from the trust account with respect to our rights or warrants, which will expire worthless. We will pay the costs of any subsequent liquidation from the up to \$50,000 of interest that may be released to us from the trust account to pay for our liquidation and dissolution expenses. If such interest is insufficient, our sponsor has contractually agreed to advance us the funds necessary to complete such liquidation and has contractually agreed not to seek repayment for such expenses.

If we are unable to complete an initial business combination and expend all of the net proceeds of this offering, other than the proceeds deposited in the trust account, and without taking into account interest, if any, earned on the trust account, the initial per-share redemption price would be \$10.05. The proceeds deposited in the trust account could, however, become subject to claims of our creditors that are in preference to the claims of public stockholders.

Our public stockholders shall be entitled to receive funds from the trust account only in the event of our failure to complete a business combination within the required time period, if the stockholders seek to have us convert or purchase their respective shares upon a business combination which is actually completed by us or upon certain amendments to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation prior to consummating an initial business combination. In no other circumstances shall a stockholder have any right or interest of any kind to or in the trust account.

If we are forced to file a bankruptcy case or an involuntary bankruptcy case is filed against us which is not dismissed, the proceeds held in the trust account could be subject to applicable bankruptcy law, and may be included in our bankruptcy estate and subject to the claims of third parties with priority over the claims of our stockholders. To the extent any bankruptcy claims deplete the trust account, we cannot assure you we will be able to return to our public stockholders at least \$10.05 per share.

If we are forced to file a bankruptcy case or an involuntary bankruptcy case is filed against us which is not dismissed, any distributions received by stockholders could be viewed under applicable debtor/creditor and/or bankruptcy laws as either a "preferential transfer" or a "fraudulent conveyance." As a result, a bankruptcy court could seek to recover all amounts received by our stockholders. Furthermore, because we intend to distribute the proceeds held in the trust account to our public stockholders promptly after twenty-four months from the date of this prospectus, this may be viewed or interpreted as giving preference to our public stockholders over any potential creditors with respect to access to or distributions from our assets. Furthermore, our board may be viewed as having breached their fiduciary duties to our creditors and/or may have acted in bad faith, and thereby exposing itself and our company to claims of punitive damages, by paying public stockholders from the trust account prior to addressing the claims of creditors. We cannot assure you that claims will not be brought against us for these reasons.

Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation contains certain requirements and restrictions relating to this offering that will apply to us until the consummation of our initial business combination. These provisions cannot be amended without the approval of a majority of our stockholders. If we seek to amend any provisions of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation that would affect our public stockholders' ability to convert or sell their shares to us in connection with a business combination as described herein or affect the substance or timing of our obligation to redeem 100% of our public shares if we do not complete a business combination within 21 months from the closing of this offering, we will provide dissenting public stockholders with the opportunity to convert their public shares in connection with any such vote. This conversion right shall apply in the event of the approval of any such amendment, whether proposed by our sponsor, any executive officer, director or director nominee, or any other person. Our sponsor, officers and directors have agreed to waive any conversion rights with respect to any founders' shares, private shares and any public shares they may hold in connection with any vote to amend our amended and restated certificate of incorporation. Specifically, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides, among other things, that:

- we shall either (1) seek stockholder approval of our initial business combination at a meeting called for such purpose at which stockholders may seek to convert their shares, regardless of whether they vote for or against the proposed business combination, into their pro rata share of the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account (net of taxes payable), or (2) provide our stockholders with the opportunity to sell their shares to us by means of a tender offer (and thereby avoid the need for a stockholder vote) for an amount equal to their pro rata share of the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account (net of taxes payable), in each case subject to the limitations described herein;
- we will consummate our initial business combination only if we have net tangible assets of at least \$5,000,001 upon such consummation and, if we seek stockholder approval, a majority of the outstanding shares of common stock voted are voted in favor of the business combination;
- if our initial business combination is not consummated within 21 months from the closing of this offering, then we will redeem all of the outstanding public shares and thereafter liquidate and dissolve our company;
- upon the consummation of this offering, \$100.5 million, or \$115.575 million if the over-allotment option is exercised in full, shall be placed into the trust account;
- we may not consummate any other business combination, merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar transaction prior to our initial business combination; and
- prior to our initial business combination, we may not issue additional stock that participates in any manner in the proceeds of the trust account, or that votes as a class with the common stock sold in this offering on an initial business combination.

Competition

In identifying, evaluating and selecting a target business, we may encounter intense competition from other entities having a business objective similar to ours. Many of these entities are well established and have extensive experience identifying and effecting business combinations directly or through affiliates. Many of these competitors possess greater technical, human and other resources than us and our financial resources will be relatively limited when contrasted with those of many of these competitors. While we believe there may be numerous potential target businesses that we could acquire with the net proceeds of this offering, our ability to compete in acquiring certain sizable target businesses may be limited by our available financial resources.

The following also may not be viewed favorably by certain target businesses:

- our obligation to seek stockholder approval of a business combination or engage in a tender offer may delay the completion of a transaction;
- our obligation to convert or repurchase shares of common stock held by our public stockholders may reduce the resources available to us for a business combination;
- our obligation to pay EarlyBirdCapital a fee of 3.5% of the gross proceeds of this offering upon consummation of our initial business combination; and
- our outstanding rights, warrants and unit purchase options, and the potential future dilution they represent.

Any of these factors may place us at a competitive disadvantage in successfully negotiating a business combination. Our management believes, however, that our status as a public entity and potential access to the United States public equity markets may give us a competitive advantage over privately-held entities having a similar business objective as ours in acquiring a target business with significant growth potential on favorable terms.

If we succeed in effecting a business combination, there will be, in all likelihood, intense competition from competitors of the target business. We cannot assure you that, subsequent to a business combination, we will have the resources or ability to compete effectively.

Facilities

We currently maintain our principal executive offices at 110 North 5th Street, Suite 410, Minneapolis, Minnesota 55403. The cost for this space is included in the \$10,000 per-month fee our sponsor will charge us for general and administrative services commencing on the date of this prospectus pursuant to a letter agreement between us and our sponsor. We believe, based on rents and fees for similar services in Minneapolis, Minnesota area, that the fee charged by our sponsor is at least as favorable as we could have obtained from an unaffiliated person. We consider our current office space, combined with the other office space otherwise available to our executive officers, adequate for our current operations.

Employees

We have three executive officers. These individuals are not obligated to devote any specific number of hours to our matters and intend to devote only as much time as they deem necessary to our affairs. The amount of time they will devote in any time period will vary based on whether a target business has been selected for the business combination and the stage of the business combination process the company is in. Accordingly, once a suitable target business to acquire has been located, management will spend more time investigating such target business and negotiating and processing the business combination (and consequently spend more time on our affairs) than had been spent prior to locating a suitable target business. We presently expect our executive officers to devote such amount of time as they reasonably believe is necessary to our business. We do not intend to have any full time employees prior to the consummation of a business combination.

Periodic Reporting and Audited Financial Statements

We have registered our units, common stock, rights and warrants under the Exchange Act and have reporting obligations, including the requirement that we file annual, quarterly and current reports with the SEC. In accordance with the requirements of the Exchange Act, our annual report will contain financial statements audited and reported on by our independent registered public accountants.

We will provide stockholders with audited financial statements of the prospective target business as part of any proxy solicitation materials or tender offer documents sent to stockholders to assist them in assessing the target business. These financial statements will need to be prepared in accordance with or reconciled to United States generally accepted accounting principles or international financial reporting standards. We cannot assure you that any particular target business identified by us as a potential acquisition candidate will have the necessary financial statements. To the extent that this requirement cannot be met, we may not be able to acquire the proposed target business.

We may be required to have our internal control procedures audited for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2018 as required by the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. A target company may not be in compliance with the provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act regarding adequacy of their internal controls. The development of the internal controls of any such entity to achieve compliance with the Sarbanes-Oxley Act may increase the time and costs necessary to complete any such acquisition.

Legal Proceedings

There is no material litigation, arbitration or governmental proceeding currently pending against us or any members of our management team in their capacity as such, and we and the members of our management team have not been subject to any such proceeding in the 12 months preceding the date of this prospectus.

Comparison to Offerings of Blank Check Companies Subject to Rule 419

The following table compares and contrasts the terms of our offering and the terms of an offering of blank check companies under Rule 419 promulgated by the SEC assuming that the gross proceeds, underwriting discounts and underwriting expenses for the Rule 419 offering are the same as this offering and that the underwriters will not exercise their over-allotment option. None of the terms of a Rule 419 offering will apply to this offering because we will have net tangible assets in excess of \$5,000,000 upon the successful consummation of this offering and will file a Current Report on Form 8-K, including an audited balance sheet demonstrating this fact

	<u>Terms of the Offering</u>	<u>Terms Under a Rule 419 Offering</u>
Escrow of offering proceeds	\$100,500,000 of the net offering proceeds including the \$3,500,000 we will receive from the sale of the private units will be deposited into a U.S.-based trust account at Morgan Stanley and maintained by Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, acting as trustee	\$88,200,000 of the offering proceeds would be required to be deposited into either an escrow account with an insured depository institution or in a separate bank account established by a broker-dealer in which the broker-dealer acts as trustee for persons having the beneficial interests in the account.

Terms of the Offering

Terms Under a Rule 419 Offering

Investment of net proceeds	The \$100,500,000 of net offering proceeds including the \$3,500,000 we will receive from the sale of the private units held in trust will only be invested in United States “government securities” within the meaning of Section 2(a)(16) of the Investment Company Act with a maturity of 180 days or less or in money market funds meeting certain conditions under Rule 2a-7 promulgated under the Investment Company Act which invest only in direct U.S. government treasury obligations.	Proceeds could be invested only in specified securities such as a money market fund meeting conditions of the Investment Company Act or in securities that are direct obligations of, or obligations guaranteed as to principal or interest by, the United States.
Limitation on fair value or net assets of target business	Our initial business combination must occur with one or more target businesses that together have a fair market value of at least 80% of the assets held in the trust account (excluding taxes payable on the income earned on the trust account) at the time of the agreement to enter into the initial business combination.	We would be restricted from acquiring a target business unless the fair value of such business or net assets to be acquired represent at least 80% of the maximum offering proceeds.
Trading of securities issued	The units may commence trading on or promptly after the date of this prospectus. The shares of common stock, rights and warrants comprising the units will begin to trade separately on the 90 th day after the date of this prospectus unless EarlyBirdCapital, Inc. informs us of its decision to allow earlier separate trading, provided we have filed with the SEC a Current Report on Form 8-K, which includes an audited balance sheet reflecting our receipt of the proceeds of this offering, including any proceeds we receive from the exercise of the over-allotment option, if such option is exercised prior to the initial filing of such Current Report on Form 8-K. If the over-allotment option is exercised after the initial filing of such Current Report on Form 8-K, we will file an amendment to the Form 8-K to provide updated financial information to reflect the exercise and consummation of the over-allotment option. We will also include in this Form 8-K, an amendment thereto, or in a subsequent Form 8-K, information indicating if EarlyBirdCapital, Inc. has allowed separate trading of the shares of common stock, rights and warrants prior to the 90 th day after the date of this prospectus.	No trading of the units or the underlying shares of common stock, rights and warrants would be permitted until the completion of a business combination. During this period, the securities would be held in the escrow or trust account.

Terms of the Offering

Terms Under a Rule 419 Offering

Exercise of the warrants

The warrants cannot be exercised until the later of 30 days after the completion of a business combination or 12 months from the closing of this offering and, accordingly, will be exercised only after the trust account has been terminated and distributed

The warrants could be exercised prior to the completion of a business combination, but securities received and cash paid in connection with the exercise would be deposited in the escrow or trust account.

Election to remain an investor

We will either (1) give our stockholders the opportunity to vote on the business combination or (2) provide our public stockholders with the opportunity to sell their shares of our common stock to us in a tender offer for cash equal to their pro rata share of the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account, less taxes. If we hold a meeting to approve a proposed business combination, we will send each stockholder a proxy statement containing information required by the SEC. Alternatively, if we do not hold a meeting and instead conduct a tender offer, we will conduct such tender offer in accordance with the tender offer rules of the SEC and file tender offer documents with the SEC which will contain substantially the same financial and other information about the initial business combination as we would have included in a proxy statement.

A prospectus containing information required by the SEC would be sent to each investor. Each investor would be given the opportunity to notify the company, in writing, within a period of no less than 20 business days and no more than 45 business days from the effective date of the post-effective amendment, to decide whether he or she elects to remain a stockholder of the company or require the return of his or her investment. If the company has not received the notification by the end of the 45th business day, funds and interest or dividends, if any, held in the trust or escrow account would automatically be returned to the stockholder. Unless a sufficient number of investors elect to remain investors, all of the deposited funds in the escrow account must be returned to all investors and none of the securities will be issued.

Business combination deadline

Pursuant to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation, if we are unable to complete our initial business combination within 21 months from the closing of this offering, we will (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but not more than ten business days thereafter, redeem 100% of the outstanding public shares, at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the trust account, including any interest not released to us but net of franchise and income taxes payable, divided by the number of then outstanding public shares, which redemption will completely extinguish public stockholders' rights as stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidation distributions, if any), subject to applicable law, and (iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of our remaining stockholders and our board of directors, dissolve and liquidate, subject (in the case of (ii) and (iii) above) to our obligations under Delaware law to provide for claims of creditors and the requirements of other applicable law.

If an acquisition has not been consummated within 18 months after the effective date of the initial registration statement, funds held in the trust or escrow account would be returned to investors.

Terms of the Offering

Terms Under a Rule 419 Offering

Interest earned on the funds in the trust account

There can be released to us, from time to time, (i) any interest earned on the funds in the trust account that we may need to pay our tax obligations and (ii) up to \$50,000 of any remaining interest earned on the funds in the trust account that we need for our liquidation and dissolution expenses. The remaining interest earned on the funds in the trust account will not be released until the earlier of the completion of a business combination and our liquidation upon failure to effect a business combination within the allotted time.

All interest earned on the funds in the trust account will be held in trust for the benefit of public stockholders until the earlier of the completion of a business combination and our liquidation upon failure to effect a business combination within the allotted time.

Release of funds

Except for (i) any interest earned on the funds in the trust account that we may need to pay our tax obligations and (ii) up to \$50,000 of any remaining interest earned on the funds in the trust account that we need for our liquidation and dissolution expenses, the proceeds held in the trust account will not be released to us until the earlier of the completion of a business combination and our liquidation upon failure to effect a business combination within the allotted time.

The proceeds held in the escrow account would not be released to the company until the earlier of the completion of a business combination or the failure to effect a business combination within the allotted time.

MANAGEMENT

Directors and Executive Officers

Our current directors and executive officers are as follows:

Name	Age	Position
Ken DeCubellis	50	Chairman of the Board and Chief Executive Officer
Michael Eisele	35	Chief Operating Officer
James Moe	60	Chief Financial Officer, Secretary and Treasurer
Bradley Berman	46	Director
Benjamin S. Oehler	69	Director
Joseph Lahti	57	Director
Lyle Berman	76	Director

Kenneth DeCubellis has been our chairman of the board and chief executive officer since our inception. Since November 2011, Mr. DeCubellis has served as chief executive officer of our sponsor, Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc. Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc. is an oil and gas company that pursues distressed asset acquisitions in all unconventional, onshore U.S. oil and gas basins, including over \$100 million previously invested in the Williston Basin in North Dakota and Montana. Prior to joining Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Mr. DeCubellis was the president and chief executive officer of Altra Inc., a venture capital backed biofuels company based in Los Angeles, California. He joined Altra in June 2006 as vice president, business development and was promoted to president in November of 2007 and chief executive officer in February 2008. When Mr. DeCubellis became chief executive officer of Altra Inc in 2008, the company was in deep financial distress. Mr. DeCubellis implemented a comprehensive corporate wide restructuring effort that was completed in 2009. This included restructuring and eliminating all of the debt at Altra Inc, raising capital at Altra Inc and refocusing the strategy of the company on a technology license. As part of this restructuring, certain wholly-owned subsidiaries of Altra, Inc. surrendered assets to lenders or entered in receivership. From 1996 to 2006, Mr. DeCubellis was an executive with Exxon Mobil Corp. in Houston, Texas. Mr. DeCubellis also previously served as the chairman of KD Global Energy Belize Ltd., a company that provides technical and business services for petroleum lease holders in Belize. Mr. DeCubellis holds a B.S. in Mechanical Engineering from Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute, an MBA from Northwestern University's JL Kellogg Graduate School of Management, and a Masters of Engineering Management from Northwestern University's McCormick School of Engineering.

We believe Mr. DeCubellis is well-qualified to serve as a member of our board of directors due to his executive leadership and industry experience.

Michael Eisele has been our chief operating officer since May 2017. Mr. Eisele has been the chief operating officer of our sponsor since August 2013, and prior to that had served as our sponsor's vice president of land from August 2012 to August 2013, overseeing its acreage portfolio and managing acquisitions and divestitures. Prior to joining our sponsor, Mr. Eisele was the co-owner and landman of High West Resources, Ltd. from 2011 to July 2012, the owner of Eisele Resources LLC from 2009 to 2012, and a self-employed landman from 2007 to 2009. Mr. Eisele is a graduate of Luther College (B.A.).

James Moe has been our chief financial officer, secretary and treasurer since May 2017. Mr. Moe has been the chief financial officer of our sponsor since March 2011. Mr. Moe had previously been the chief financial officer of Northern Contours Inc., a multi-state manufacturing company located in Mendota Heights, Minnesota specializing in cabinet doors and work surfaces, from August 2005 until March 2011. From January 2004 to August 2005, he was the chief financial officer of Trimodal Inc., a trucking and container handling company located in Bloomington, Minnesota, which operated in seven cities in the Midwest and East Coast. From April 2000 to December 2003, Mr. Moe was the corporate controller of Simondelivers.com, a venture capital backed start-up company located in Golden Valley, Minnesota providing home delivery of groceries ordered over the internet. From October 1994 to April 2000, he was the corporate controller of Recovery Engineering Inc., a publicly traded manufacturer and distributor of small-scale water filters located in Brooklyn Park, Minnesota. From November 1989 to October 1994, Mr. Moe was the controller of Standard Iron and Wire Works, a privately held multi-division metal fabricator operating three plants in Minnesota. Upon graduating from the University of Minnesota with a Bachelor of Science degree in accounting in 1985, Mr. Moe worked as a senior accountant until November 1989 for Boulay, Heutmaker, Zibell & Company.

Bradley Berman has been a director since May 2017. He has been the chairman of our sponsor since November 2010 and has served as a director of our sponsor since its inception in April 2010. He was our sponsor's chief executive officer from November 2010 to November 2011, its chief financial officer between November 12, 2010 and November 15, 2010, and its corporate secretary from November 2010 to February 2011. Mr. Berman is the president of King Show Games, Inc., a company he founded in 1998. Mr. Berman has worked in various capacities in casino gaming from 1992 to 2004 for Grand Casinos, Inc. and then Lakes Entertainment, Inc., achieving the position of Vice President of Gaming, after which he assumed a lesser role in that company. Mr. Berman was a director of Voyager Oil and Gas, Inc. (formerly Ante4 and WPT) from August 2004 to November 2010. Mr. Berman is the son of Lyle Berman, one of our directors.

We believe Mr. Berman is well-qualified to serve as a member of our board of directors due to his executive leadership and industry and financing experience.

Benjamin S. Oehler has been a director of ours since May 2017. Mr. Oehler has been a director of our sponsor since November 2010, and chairman of its audit committee and compensation committee since February 2011. Mr. Oehler is a Founding Partner of Windward Mark, LLC which advises business owners with regard to strategic planning, owner governance and education, business continuity, legacy, philanthropy and liquidity. Windward Mark LLC is a continuation of Mr. Oehler's consulting practice at Bashaw Group, Inc. (2007-2017) and Linea Capital, LLC (2009 - 2017). From 1999 to 2007, Mr. Oehler was the president and chief executive officer of Waycrosse, Inc., a financial advisory firm for the family owners of Cargill Incorporated. While at Waycrosse, Mr. Oehler was the primary advisor to the five family members who were serving on the Cargill Incorporated board of directors from 1999 to 2006. Mr. Oehler played a key role in two major growth initiatives for Cargill: the merger of Cargill's fertilizer business into a public company which is now Mosaic, Inc., and the transformation of Cargill's proprietary financial markets trading group into two major investment management companies: Black River Asset Management, LLC and CarVal Investors, LLC. An investment banker for 20 years, Mr. Oehler's transaction experience includes public offerings and private placements of debt and equity securities, mergers and acquisitions, fairness opinions and valuations of private companies. Prior to joining Waycrosse, Mr. Oehler was an investment banker for Piper Jaffray. By the time he left Piper Jaffray in 1999, he was group head for Piper's Industrial Growth Team. He has also played a leadership role in a number of corporate buy-outs and venture stage companies, served on corporate and non-profit boards of directors, and has been involved in the creation and oversight of foundations and charitable organizations, as well as U.S. trusts and off-shore entities.

Mr. Oehler has been a board member and/or founder of many non-profit organizations including the Minnesota Zoological Society, Minnesota Landscape Arboretum, The Lake Country Land School, Greencastle Tropical Study Center, Park Nicollet Institute, Afton Historical Society Press, United Theological Seminary and University of Minnesota Investment Advisor, Inc. He has been a director of Waycrosse, Inc., WayTrust Inc., Dain Equity Partners, Inc., Time Management, Inc., BioNIR, Inc. and Agricultural Solutions, Inc. In September 2007, Mr. Oehler completed the Stanford University Law School Directors Forum, a three-day update on key issues facing corporate directors presented by the Stanford Business School and Stanford Law School. From 1984 through 1999, Mr. Oehler was registered with the National Association of Securities Dealers ("NASD") as a financial principal. Mr. Oehler is a graduate of the University of Minnesota College of Liberal Arts and has completed all course work at the University of Minnesota Business School with a concentration in finance.

We believe Mr. Oehler is well-qualified to serve as a member of our board of directors due to his executive leadership and industry and financing experience.

Joseph Lahti has been a director of ours since May 2017. Mr. Lahti has been a director of our sponsor since August 2012. Mr. Lahti is a Minneapolis native and leader in numerous Minnesota business and community organizations. As principal of JL Holdings since 1989, Mr. Lahti has provided funding and management leadership to several early-stage or distressed companies. From 1993 to 2002, he held the positions of chief operating officer, president, chief executive officer and chairman at Shuffle Master, Inc., a company that provided innovative products to the gaming industry. Mr. Lahti served as a director of PokerTek, Inc., a publicly traded company, from 2008 until it was sold in October 2014 (including serving as Chairman of the Board from 2012 to 2014), and he is also an independent director and Chairman of the Board of AFAM Capital, an investment manager. Within the past five years Mr. Lahti served on the board of directors of Voyager Oil & Gas, Inc., and more than five years ago Mr. Lahti served as the Chairman of the Board of directors of Shuffle Master, Inc. and served on the board of directors of Zomax, Inc. Through his public company Board experience, he has participated on, and chaired, both Audit and Compensation Committees.

We believe Mr. Lahti is well-qualified to serve as a member of our board of directors due to his executive leadership and industry and financing experience.

Lyle Berman has been a director of ours since May 2017. Mr. Berman has been a director of our sponsor since October 2016. Since June 1990, Mr. Berman has been the chairman and chief executive officer of Berman Consulting Corporation, a private consulting firm he founded. Mr. Berman began his career with Berman Buckskin, his family's leather business, which he helped grow into a major specialty retailer with 27 outlets. After selling Berman Buckskin to W.R. Grace in 1979, Mr. Berman continued as president and chief executive officer and led the company to become one of the country's largest retail leather chains, with over 200 stores nationwide. In 1990, Mr. Berman participated in the founding of Grand Casinos, Inc. Mr. Berman is credited as one of the early visionaries in the development of casinos outside of the traditional gaming markets of Las Vegas and Atlantic City. In less than five years, the company opened eight casino resorts in four states. In 1994, Mr. Berman financed the initial development of Rainforest Cafe. He served as the chairman and chief executive officer from 1994 until 2000. In October 1995, Mr. Berman was honored with the B'nai B'rith "Great American Traditions Award." In April 1996, he received the Gaming Executive of the Year Award; in 2004, Mr. Berman was inducted into the Poker Hall of Fame; and in 2009, he received the Casino Lifetime Achievement Award from Raving Consulting & Casino Journal. In 1998, Lakes Entertainment, Inc. was formed. In 2002, as chairman of the board and chief executive officer of Lakes Entertainment, Inc., Mr. Berman was instrumental in creating the World Poker Tour. Mr. Berman served as the executive chairman of the board of WPT Enterprises, Inc. (later known as Voyager Oil & Gas, Inc. and Emerald Oil, Inc.) from its inception in February 2002 until July 2013. Mr. Berman also served as a director of PokerTek, Inc. from January 2005 until October 2014, including serving as chairman of the board from January 2005 until October 2011. Mr. Berman is the father of Brad Berman, one of our directors.

We believe Mr. Berman is well-qualified to serve as a member of our board of directors due to his executive leadership and industry and financing experience.

Our board of directors is divided into three classes with only one class of directors being elected in each year and each class serving a three-year term. The term of office of the first class of directors, consisting of Bradley Berman, will expire at our first annual meeting of stockholders. The term of office of the second class of directors, consisting of Joseph Lahti and Benjamin Oehler, will expire at the second annual meeting. The term of office of the third class of directors, consisting of Ken DeCubellis and Lyle Berman, will expire at the third annual meeting.

Executive Compensation

No executive officer has received any cash compensation for services rendered to us. Commencing on the date of this prospectus through the acquisition of a target business, we will pay our sponsor an aggregate fee of \$10,000 per month for providing us with office space and certain office and secretarial services. However, this arrangement is solely for our benefit and is not intended to provide our executive officers or directors compensation in lieu of a salary.

Other than the \$10,000 per month administrative fee and the repayment of the \$125,000 loan made by our sponsor to us, no compensation or fees of any kind, including finder's, consulting fees and other similar fees, will be paid to our sponsor, members of our management team or their respective affiliates, for services rendered prior to or in connection with the consummation of our initial business combination (regardless of the type of transaction that it is). However, they will receive reimbursement for any out-of-pocket expenses incurred by them in connection with activities on our behalf, such as identifying potential target businesses, performing business due diligence on suitable target businesses and business combinations as well as traveling to and from the offices, plants or similar locations of prospective target businesses to examine their operations. There is no limit on the amount of out-of-pocket expenses reimbursable by us.

After our initial business combination, members of our management team who remain with us may be paid consulting, management or other fees from the combined company with any and all amounts being fully disclosed to stockholders, to the extent then known, in the proxy solicitation materials furnished to our stockholders. It is unlikely the amount of such compensation will be known at the time of a stockholder meeting held to consider an initial business combination, as it will be up to the directors of the post-combination business to determine executive and director compensation. In this event, such compensation will be publicly disclosed at the time of its determination in a Current Report on Form 8-K, as required by the SEC.

Director Independence

Currently Messrs. Berman, Oehler, Lahti and Berman would each be considered an "independent director" under the Nasdaq listing rules, which is defined generally as a person other than an officer or employee of the company or its subsidiaries or any other individual having a relationship, which, in the opinion of the company's board of directors would interfere with the director's exercise of independent judgment in carrying out the responsibilities of a director.

Our independent directors will have regularly scheduled meetings at which only independent directors are present.

Any affiliated transactions will be on terms no less favorable to us than could be obtained from independent parties. Our board of directors will review and approve all affiliated transactions with any interested director abstaining from such review and approval.

Audit Committee

Effective upon the date of this prospectus, we will establish an audit committee of the board of directors, which will consist of Benjamin Oehler (chairman), Joseph Lahti and Lyle Berman, each of whom is an independent director under Nasdaq's listing standards. The audit committee's duties, which are specified in our Audit Committee Charter, include, but are not limited to:

- reviewing and discussing with management and the independent auditor the annual audited financial statements, and recommending to the board whether the audited financial statements should be included in our Form 10-K;
- discussing with management and the independent auditor significant financial reporting issues and judgments made in connection with the preparation of our financial statements;
- discussing with management major risk assessment and risk management policies;
- monitoring the independence of the independent auditor;
- verifying the rotation of the lead (or coordinating) audit partner having primary responsibility for the audit and the audit partner responsible for reviewing the audit as required by law;
- reviewing and approving all related-party transactions;
- inquiring and discussing with management our compliance with applicable laws and regulations;
- pre-approving all audit services and permitted non-audit services to be performed by our independent auditor, including the fees and terms of the services to be performed;
- appointing or replacing the independent auditor;
- determining the compensation and oversight of the work of the independent auditor (including resolution of disagreements between management and the independent auditor regarding financial reporting) for the purpose of preparing or issuing an audit report or related work;
- establishing procedures for the receipt, retention and treatment of complaints received by us regarding accounting, internal accounting controls or reports which raise material issues regarding our financial statements or accounting policies; and
- approving reimbursement of expenses incurred by our management team in identifying potential target businesses.

Financial Experts on Audit Committee

The audit committee will at all times be composed exclusively of "independent directors" who are "financially literate" as defined under Nasdaq's listing standards. Nasdaq's standards define "financially literate" as being able to read and understand fundamental financial statements, including a company's balance sheet, income statement and cash flow statement.

In addition, we must certify to Nasdaq that the committee has, and will continue to have, at least one member who has past employment experience in finance or accounting, requisite professional certification in accounting, or other comparable experience or background that results in the individual's financial sophistication. The board of directors has determined that Mr. Oehler qualifies as an "audit committee financial expert," as defined under rules and regulations of the SEC.

Nominating Committee

Effective upon the date of this prospectus, we will establish a nominating committee of the board of directors, which will consist of Bradley Berman (chairman), Benjamin Oehler and Lyle Berman, each of whom is an independent director under Nasdaq's listing standards. The nominating committee is responsible for overseeing the selection of persons to be nominated to serve on our board of directors. The nominating committee considers persons identified by its members, management, stockholders, investment bankers and others.

Guidelines for Selecting Director Nominees

The guidelines for selecting nominees, which are specified in the Nominating Committee Charter, generally provide that persons to be nominated:

- should have demonstrated notable or significant achievements in business, education or public service;

- should possess the requisite intelligence, education and experience to make a significant contribution to the board of directors and bring a range of skills, diverse perspectives and backgrounds to its deliberations; and
- should have the highest ethical standards, a strong sense of professionalism and intense dedication to serving the interests of the stockholders.

The Nominating Committee will consider a number of qualifications relating to management and leadership experience, background and integrity and professionalism in evaluating a person's candidacy for membership on the board of directors. The nominating committee may require certain skills or attributes, such as financial or accounting experience, to meet specific board needs that arise from time to time and will also consider the overall experience and makeup of its members to obtain a broad and diverse mix of board members. The nominating committee does not distinguish among nominees recommended by stockholders and other persons.

Compensation Committee

Effective upon the date of this prospectus, we will establish a compensation committee of the board of directors, which will consist of Lyle Berman (chairman), Joseph Lahti and Benjamin Oehler, each of whom is an independent director under Nasdaq's listing standards. The compensation committee's duties, which are specified in our Compensation Committee Charter, include, but are not limited to:

- reviewing and approving on an annual basis the corporate goals and objectives relevant to our Chief Executive Officer's compensation, evaluating our Chief Executive Officer's performance in light of such goals and objectives and determining and approving the remuneration (if any) of our Chief Executive Officer based on such evaluation;
- reviewing and approving the compensation of all of our other executive officers;
- reviewing our executive compensation policies and plans;
- implementing and administering our incentive compensation equity-based remuneration plans;
- assisting management in complying with our proxy statement and annual report disclosure requirements;
- approving all special perquisites, special cash payments and other special compensation and benefit arrangements for our executive officers and employees;
- if required, producing a report on executive compensation to be included in our annual proxy statement; and
- reviewing, evaluating and recommending changes, if appropriate, to the remuneration for directors.

Code of Ethics

Effective upon consummation of this offering, we will adopt a code of ethics that applies to all of our executive officers, directors and employees. The code of ethics codifies the business and ethical principles that govern all aspects of our business.

Conflicts of Interest

In general, officers and directors of a corporation incorporated under the laws of the State of Delaware are required to present business opportunities to a corporation if:

- the corporation could financially undertake the opportunity;
- the opportunity is within the corporation's line of business; and
- it would not be fair to the corporation and its stockholders for the opportunity not to be brought to the attention of the corporation.

Each of our officers and directors is an officer and/or director of our sponsor. As described elsewhere in this prospectus, our sponsor is an oil and gas company that pursues distressed asset acquisitions in the energy industry, the same industry within which we intend to focus our search for a target business. As a result, it is possible that a potential opportunity could be suitable for us as well as our sponsor. Our sponsor recently completed a rights offering in which it raised an aggregate of approximately \$5,182,000. Of this amount, up to \$3,875,000 (assuming the underwriters' over-allotment option is exercised in full) would be used to purchase the private units with the balance being available to our sponsor for working capital purposes, including potential investments and acquisitions. However, our sponsor intends to acquire assets from businesses with private equity backing that are seeking to sell such assets for cash without retaining any equity interest in them, whereas we intend to acquire a target business from a seller that wishes to retain a significant equity interest in the combined company. Accordingly, our management team does not believe that there will be a meaningful conflict between our sponsor and our company in relation to consummating a business combination. Nevertheless, we cannot assure you of this fact and it is possible that a suitable business opportunity will be presented to our sponsor prior to its presentation to our company.

In relation to the foregoing, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides that:

- we renounce any interest or expectancy in, or being offered an opportunity to participate in, any business opportunities that are presented to us or our officers, directors or stockholders or affiliates thereof, including but not limited to, our sponsor and its affiliates, except as may be prescribed by any written agreement with us; and
- our officers and directors will not be liable to our company or our stockholders for monetary damages for breach of any fiduciary duty by reason of any of our activities or any of our sponsor or its affiliates to the fullest extent permitted by Delaware law.

In addition to our sponsor, our officers and directors are, and may in the future become, affiliated with other companies. In order to minimize potential conflicts of interest which may arise from such other corporate affiliations, each of our officers and directors has contractually agreed, pursuant to a written agreement with us, until the earliest of our execution of a definitive agreement for a business combination, our liquidation or such time as he ceases to be an officer or director, to present to our company for our consideration, prior to presentation to any other entity, any suitable business opportunity which may reasonably be required to be presented to us, subject to any pre-existing fiduciary or contractual obligations he might have.

The following table summarizes the relevant pre-existing fiduciary or contractual obligations of our officers and directors besides our sponsor:

<u>Name of Individual</u>	<u>Name of Affiliated Entity</u>	<u>Priority/Preference relative to BRAC</u>
Bradley Berman	King Show Games, Inc.	Mr. Berman may present all business opportunities which are suitable for King Show Games to King Show Games prior to presenting them to us.
Benjamin Oehler	Windward Mark	Mr. Oehler may present all business opportunities which are suitable for Windward Mark to Windward Mark prior to presenting them to us.
Joseph Lahti	JL Holdings	Mr. Lahti may present all business opportunities which are suitable for JL Holdings to JL Holdings prior to presenting them to us.

Investors should also be aware of the following potential conflicts of interest:

- None of our officers and directors is required to commit their full time to our affairs and, accordingly, they may have conflicts of interest in allocating their time among various business activities.
- Unless we consummate our initial business combination, our officers, directors and sponsor will not receive reimbursement or repayment for any out-of-pocket expenses incurred by them, or loans made to us, to the extent that such expenses exceed the amount of available proceeds not deposited in the trust account.
- The founders' shares beneficially owned by our sponsor will be released from escrow only if a business combination is successfully completed, and the private units purchased by our sponsor, and any warrants which our officers or directors may purchase in the aftermarket will expire worthless if a business combination is not consummated. Additionally, our officers and directors will not receive liquidation distributions with respect to any of their founders' shares or private shares. Furthermore, our sponsor has agreed that the private units will not be sold or transferred by it until after we have completed a business combination. For the foregoing reasons, our board may have a conflict of interest in determining whether a particular target business is appropriate to effect a business combination with.

To further minimize conflicts of interest, we have agreed not to consummate an initial business combination with an entity that is affiliated with any of our officers, directors or sponsor including (i) an entity that is either a portfolio company of, or has otherwise received a material financial investment from, any private equity fund or investment company (or an affiliate thereof) that is affiliated with any of the foregoing, (ii) an entity in which any of the foregoing or their affiliates are currently passive investors, (iii) an entity in which any of the foregoing or their affiliates are currently officers or directors, or (iv) an entity in which any of the foregoing or their affiliates are currently invested through an investment vehicle controlled by them, unless we have obtained an opinion from an independent investment banking firm, or another independent entity that commonly renders valuation opinions on the type of target business we are seeking to acquire, and the approval of a majority of our disinterested independent directors that the business combination is fair to our unaffiliated stockholders from a financial point of view. Furthermore, in no event will any of our sponsor, members of our management team or their respective affiliates be paid any finder's fee, consulting fee or other similar compensation prior to, or for any services they render in order to effectuate, the consummation of an initial business combination (regardless of the type of transaction that it is) other than the \$10,000 administrative services fee, repayment of the \$125,000 loan from our sponsor and reimbursement of any out-of-pocket expenses.

PRINCIPAL STOCKHOLDERS

The following table sets forth information regarding the beneficial ownership of our shares of common stock as of the date of this prospectus and as adjusted to reflect the sale of our shares of common stock included in the units offered by this prospectus (assuming none of the individuals listed purchase units in this offering), by:

- each person known by us to be the beneficial owner of more than 5% of our outstanding shares of common stock;
- each of our officers and directors; and
- all of our officers and directors as a group.

Unless otherwise indicated, we believe that all persons named in the table have sole voting and investment power with respect to all shares of common stock beneficially owned by them. The following table does not reflect record of beneficial ownership of the rights or warrants included in the units offered by this prospectus or the private units as these rights and warrants are not convertible or exercisable within 60 days of the date of this prospectus.

Name and Address of Beneficial Owner ⁽¹⁾	Prior to Offering		After Offering ⁽²⁾	
	Amount and Nature of Beneficial Ownership	Approximate Percentage of Outstanding Shares of Common Stock	Amount and Nature of Beneficial Ownership	Approximate Percentage of Outstanding Shares of Common Stock
Ken DeCubellis ⁽³⁾	2,875,000	100.0%	2,850,000	22.2%
Michael Eisele ⁽⁴⁾	0	0%	0	0%
James Moe ⁽⁴⁾	0	0%	0	0%
Bradley Berman ⁽⁴⁾	0	0%	0	0%
Benjamin Oehler ⁽⁴⁾	0	0%	0	0%
Joseph Lahti ⁽⁴⁾	0	0%	0	0%
Lyle Berman ⁽⁴⁾	0	0%	0	0%
Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc.	2,875,000	100.0%	2,850,000	22.2%
All directors and executive officers as a group (seven individuals)	2,875,000	100.0%	2,850,000	22.2%

* Less than 1%.

- (1) Unless otherwise indicated, the business address of each of the individuals is 110 North 5th Street, Suite 410, Minneapolis, Minnesota 55403.
- (2) Assumes no exercise of the over-allotment option and, therefore, the forfeiture of an aggregate of 375,000 shares of common stock held by our sponsor.
- (3) Represents shares held by Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc., of which this individual, as chairman and chief executive officer, exercises voting and dispositive power over such shares. Mr. DeCubellis disclaims beneficial ownership of such shares except to the extent of his ultimate pecuniary interest.
- (4) Does not include any shares held by Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc., of which each individual is an officer and/or director.

Immediately after this offering, our sponsor will beneficially own approximately 22.2% of the then issued and outstanding shares of common stock (assuming they do not purchase any units offered by this prospectus). None of our sponsor, officers and directors has indicated to us that it or they intend to purchase our securities in the offering. Because of the ownership block held by our sponsor, officers and directors, such individuals may be able to effectively exercise influence over all matters requiring approval by our stockholders, including the election of directors and approval of significant corporate transactions other than approval of our initial business combination.

If the underwriters do not exercise all or a portion of the over-allotment option, an aggregate of 375,000 founders' shares will be forfeited. Only a number of shares necessary to maintain the 20% ownership interest in our shares of common stock after giving effect to the offering and the exercise, if any, of the underwriters' over-allotment option (and excluding the private units and assuming our sponsor does not purchase any units in this offering) will be necessary.

All of the founders' shares outstanding prior to the date of this prospectus will be placed in escrow with Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, as escrow agent, until (1) with respect to 50% of the founders' shares, the earlier of one year after the date of the consummation of our initial business combination and the date on which the closing price of our common stock equals or exceeds \$12.50 per share (as adjusted for share splits, share dividends, reorganizations and recapitalizations) for any 20 trading days within any 30-trading day period commencing after our initial business combination and (2) with respect to the remaining 50% of the founders' shares, one year after the date of the consummation of our initial business combination, or earlier, in either case, if, subsequent to our initial business combination, we consummate a liquidation, merger, stock exchange or other similar transaction which results in all of our stockholders having the right to exchange their shares of common stock for cash, securities or other property. Up to 375,000 of the founders' shares may also be released from escrow earlier than this date for cancellation if the over-allotment option is not exercised in full as described above.

During the escrow period, the holders of these shares will not be able to sell or transfer their securities except for transfers, assignments or sales (i) to our or our sponsor's officers, directors, consultants or their affiliates, (ii) to an entity's members upon its liquidation, (iii) to relatives and trusts for estate planning purposes, (iv) by virtue of the laws of descent and distribution upon death, (v) pursuant to a qualified domestic relations order, (vi) to us for no value for cancellation in connection with the consummation of our initial business combination, or (vii) in connection with the consummation of a business combination at prices no greater than the price at which the shares were originally purchased, in each case (except for clause (vi) or with our prior consent) where the transferee agrees to the terms of the escrow agreement and to be bound by these transfer restrictions, but will retain all other rights as our stockholders, including, without limitation, the right to vote their shares of common stock and the right to receive cash dividends, if declared. If dividends are declared and payable in shares of common stock, such dividends will also be placed in escrow. If we are unable to effect a business combination and liquidate, there will be no liquidation distribution with respect to the founders' shares.

Our sponsor has committed to purchase the private units (for a total purchase price of \$3,500,000) from us. These purchases will take place on a private placement basis simultaneously with the consummation of this offering. Our sponsor has also agreed that if the over-allotment option is exercised by the underwriters in full or in part, it will purchase from us an additional number of private units (up to a maximum of 37,500 private units) at a price of \$10.00 per private unit necessary to maintain in the trust account \$10.05 per unit sold to the public in this offering. These additional private units will be purchased in a private placement that will occur simultaneously with the purchase of units resulting from the exercise of the over-allotment option. The private units are identical to the units sold in this offering except that the private warrants: (i) will not be redeemable by us and (ii) may be exercised for cash or on a cashless basis, as described in this prospectus, so long as they are held by the initial purchasers or any of their permitted transferees. If the private warrants are held by holders other than the initial purchasers or any of their permitted transferees, the private warrants will be redeemable by us and exercisable by the holders on the same basis as the warrants included in the units being sold in this offering. Our sponsor has agreed not to transfer, assign or sell any of the private units and underlying securities (except in connection with the same limited exceptions that the founders' shares may be transferred as described above) until after the completion of our initial business combination.

In order to meet our working capital needs following the consummation of this offering, our sponsor, officers and directors may, but are not obligated to, loan us funds, from time to time or at any time, in whatever amount they deem reasonable in their sole discretion. Each loan would be evidenced by a promissory note. The notes would either be paid upon consummation of our initial business combination, without interest, or, at holder's discretion, up to \$1,500,000 of the notes may be converted into units at a price of \$10.00 per unit. The units would be identical to the private units. In the event that the initial business combination does not close, we may use a portion of the working capital held outside the trust account to repay such loaned amounts, but no proceeds from our trust account would be used for such repayment.

Ken DeCubellis and Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc. are our "promoters," as that term is defined under the federal securities laws.

CERTAIN TRANSACTIONS

In May 2017, we issued 2,875,000 shares of common stock to our sponsor, Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc., for \$25,000 in cash, at a purchase price of approximately \$0.01 per share, in connection with our organization.

If the underwriters do not exercise all or a portion of their over-allotment option, our sponsor will forfeit up to an aggregate of 375,000 shares of common stock in proportion to the portion of the over-allotment option that was not exercised.

If the underwriters determine the size of the offering should be increased (including pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act) or decreased, a share dividend or a contribution back to capital, as applicable, would be effectuated in order to maintain our sponsor's ownership at a percentage of the number of shares to be sold in this offering.

Our sponsor has committed to purchase, pursuant to a written subscription agreement with us and Graubard Miller, as escrow agent, the 350,000 private units (for a total purchase price of \$3,500,000) from us. This purchase will take place on a private placement basis simultaneously with the consummation of this offering. Our sponsor has also agreed that if the over-allotment option is exercised by the underwriters in full or in part, it will purchase from us at a price of \$10.00 per private unit an additional number of private units (up to a maximum of 37,500 private units) necessary to maintain in the trust account \$10.05 per unit sold to the public in this offering. These additional private units will be purchased in a private placement that will occur simultaneously with the purchase of units resulting from the exercise of the over-allotment option. The purchase price for the private units will be delivered to Graubard Miller, our counsel in connection with this offering, who will also be acting solely as escrow agent in connection with the private sale of private units, at least 24 hours prior to the closing of this offering. Graubard Miller will deposit the purchase price into the trust account simultaneously with the consummation of the offering. The private units are identical to the units sold in this offering except that the private warrants: (i) will not be redeemable by us and (ii) may be exercised for cash or on a cashless basis, as described in this prospectus, so long as they are held our sponsor or any of its permitted transferees, the private warrants will be redeemable by us and exercisable by the holders on the same basis as the warrants included in the units being sold in this offering. Our sponsor has agreed not to transfer, assign or sell any of the private units and underlying securities (except to certain permitted transferees) until after the completion of our initial business combination.

In order to meet our working capital needs following the consummation of this offering, our sponsor, officers and directors may, but are not obligated to, loan us funds, from time to time or at any time, in whatever amount they deem reasonable in their sole discretion. Each loan would be evidenced by a promissory note. The notes would either be paid upon consummation of our initial business combination, without interest, or, at holder's discretion, up to \$1,500,000 of the notes may be converted into units at a price of \$10.00 per private unit. The units would be identical to the private units. Accordingly, if \$1,500,000 of notes were converted, it would result in the holders being issued 165,000 shares of common stock (as the rights included in such units would result in the issuance of an additional 15,000 shares), as well as 150,000 warrants to purchase an additional 150,000 shares. In the event that the initial business combination does not close, we may use a portion of the working capital held outside the trust account to repay such loaned amounts, but no proceeds from our trust account would be used for such repayment.

The holders of our founders' shares issued and outstanding on the date of this prospectus, as well as the holders of the private units and any units our sponsor, officers, directors or their affiliates may be issued in payment of working capital loans made to us (and all underlying securities), will be entitled to registration rights pursuant to an agreement to be signed prior to or on the effective date of this offering. The holders of a majority of these securities are entitled to make up to two demands that we register such securities. The holders of the majority of the founders' shares can elect to exercise these registration rights at any time commencing three months prior to the date on which these shares of common stock are to be released from escrow. The holders of a majority of the private units and units issued in payment of working capital loans made to us (or underlying securities) can elect to exercise these registration rights at any time after we consummate a business combination. In addition, the holders have certain "piggy-back" registration rights with respect to registration statements filed subsequent to our consummation of a business combination. We will bear the expenses incurred in connection with the filing of any such registration statements.

As of the date of this prospectus, our sponsor has loaned us an aggregate of \$125,000 to cover expenses related to this offering. The loan will be payable without interest on the consummation of this offering. We intend to repay this loan from the proceeds of this offering not being placed in trust.

Our sponsor has agreed that, commencing on the effective date of this prospectus through the earlier of our consummation of our initial business combination or our liquidation, it will make available to us certain general and administrative services, including office space, utilities and administrative support, as we may require from time to time. We have agreed to pay our sponsor \$10,000 per month for these services. We believe, based on rents and fees for similar services in the Minneapolis, Minnesota metropolitan area, that the fee charged by our sponsor is at least as favorable as we could have obtained from an unaffiliated person.

Other than the \$10,000 per month administrative fee, no compensation or fees of any kind, including finder's, consulting fees and other similar fees, will be paid to our sponsor, members of our management team or their respective affiliates, for services rendered prior to or in connection with the consummation of our initial business combination (regardless of the type of transaction that it is). However, such individuals will receive reimbursement for any out-of-pocket expenses incurred by them in connection with activities on our behalf, such as identifying potential target businesses, performing business due diligence on suitable target businesses and business combinations as well as traveling to and from the offices, plants or similar locations of prospective target businesses to examine their operations. There is no limit on the amount of out-of-pocket expenses reimbursable by us.

After our initial business combination, members of our management team who remain with us may be paid consulting, management or other fees from the combined company with any and all amounts being fully disclosed to stockholders, to the extent then known, in the proxy solicitation materials furnished to our stockholders. It is unlikely the amount of such compensation will be known at the time of a stockholder meeting held to consider an initial business combination, as it will be up to the directors of the post-combination business to determine executive and director compensation. In this event, such compensation will be publicly disclosed at the time of its determination in a Current Report on Form 8-K, as required by the SEC.

All ongoing and future transactions between us and any of our officers and directors or their respective affiliates will be on terms believed by us to be no less favorable to us than are available from unaffiliated third parties. Such transactions will require prior approval by a majority of our uninterested "independent" directors or the members of our board who do not have an interest in the transaction, in either case who had access, at our expense, to our attorneys or independent legal counsel. We will not enter into any such transaction unless our disinterested "independent" directors determine that the terms of such transaction are no less favorable to us than those that would be available to us with respect to such a transaction from unaffiliated third parties.

Related Party Policy

Our Code of Ethics requires us to avoid, wherever possible, all related party transactions that could result in actual or potential conflicts of interests, except under guidelines approved by the board of directors (or the audit committee). Related-party transactions are defined as transactions in which (1) the aggregate amount involved will or may be expected to exceed \$120,000 in any calendar year, (2) we or any of our subsidiaries is a participant, and (3) any (a) executive officer, director or nominee for election as a director, (b) greater than 5% beneficial owner of our shares of common stock, or (c) immediate family member, of the persons referred to in clauses (a) and (b), has or will have a direct or indirect material interest (other than solely as a result of being a director or a less than 10% beneficial owner of another entity). A conflict of interest situation can arise when a person takes actions or has interests that may make it difficult to perform his or her work objectively and effectively. Conflicts of interest may also arise if a person, or a member of his or her family, receives improper personal benefits as a result of his or her position.

Our audit committee, pursuant to its written charter, will be responsible for reviewing and approving related-party transactions to the extent we enter into such transactions. The audit committee will consider all relevant factors when determining whether to approve a related party transaction, including whether the related party transaction is on terms no less favorable to us than terms generally available from an unaffiliated third-party under the same or similar circumstances and the extent of the related party's interest in the transaction. No director may participate in the approval of any transaction in which he is a related party, but that director is required to provide the audit committee with all material information concerning the transaction. We also require each of our directors and executive officers to complete a directors' and officers' questionnaire that elicits information about related party transactions.

These procedures are intended to determine whether any such related party transaction impairs the independence of a director or presents a conflict of interest on the part of a director, employee or officer.

To further minimize conflicts of interest, we have agreed not to consummate an initial business combination with an entity that is affiliated with any of our sponsor, officers or directors including (i) an entity that is either a portfolio company of, or has otherwise received a material financial investment from, any private equity fund or investment company (or an affiliate thereof) that is affiliated with any of the foregoing, (ii) an entity in which any of the foregoing or their affiliates are currently passive investors, (iii) an entity in which any of the foregoing or their affiliates are currently officers or directors, or (iv) an entity in which any of the foregoing or their affiliates are currently invested through an investment vehicle controlled by them, unless we have obtained an opinion from an independent investment banking firm, or another independent entity that commonly renders valuation opinions on the type of target business we are seeking to acquire, and the approval of a majority of our disinterested independent directors that the business combination is fair to our unaffiliated stockholders from a financial point of view.

DESCRIPTION OF SECURITIES

General

As of the date of this prospectus, we will be authorized to issue 30,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$0.0001, and 1,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.0001. As of the date of this prospectus, 2,875,000 shares of common stock are outstanding. No shares of preferred stock are currently outstanding. The following description summarizes the material terms of our securities. Because it is only a summary, it may not contain all the information that is important to you. For a complete description you should refer to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation, bylaws and the form of warrant agreement, which are filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, and to the applicable provisions of Delaware law.

Units

Each unit consists of one share of common stock, one right and one warrant. Each right entitles the holder thereof to receive one-tenth (1/10) of one share of common stock upon the consummation of an initial business combination. Each warrant entitles the holder to purchase one share of common stock. The shares of common stock, rights and warrants will begin to trade separately on the 90th day after the date of this prospectus unless EarlyBirdCapital, Inc. informs us of its decision to allow earlier separate trading, provided that in no event may the shares of common stock, rights and warrants be traded separately until we have filed with the SEC a Current Report on Form 8-K which includes an audited balance sheet reflecting our receipt of the gross proceeds of this offering. Once the shares of common stock, rights and warrants commence separate trading, holders will have the option to continue to hold units or separate their units into the component pieces.

We will file a Current Report on Form 8-K which includes an audited balance sheet promptly upon the consummation of this offering. The audited balance sheet will reflect proceeds we receive from the exercise of the over-allotment option, if the over-allotment option is exercised on the date of this prospectus. If the over-allotment option is exercised after the date of this prospectus, we will file an amendment to the Form 8-K to provide updated financial information to reflect the exercise of the over-allotment option. We will also include in this Form 8-K, an amendment thereto, or in a subsequent Form 8-K information indicating if EarlyBirdCapital, Inc. has allowed separate trading of the shares of common stock, rights and warrants prior to the 90th day after the date of this prospectus.

Common Stock

Our stockholders of record are entitled to one vote for each share held on all matters to be voted on by stockholders. In connection with any vote held to approve our initial business combination, our sponsor, as well as all of our officers and directors, have agreed to vote their respective shares of common stock owned by them immediately prior to this offering and any shares purchased in this offering or following this offering in the open market in favor of the proposed business combination.

We will consummate our initial business combination only if we have net tangible assets of at least \$5,000,001 upon such consummation and, solely if a vote is held to approve a business combination, a majority of the outstanding shares of common stock voted are voted in favor of the business combination.

Our board of directors is divided into three classes, each of which will generally serve for a term of three years with only one class of directors being elected in each year. There is no cumulative voting with respect to the election of directors, with the result that the holders of more than 50% of the shares eligible to vote for the election of directors can elect all of the directors.

Pursuant to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation, if we do not consummate an initial business combination by 21 months from the closing of this offering, our corporate existence will cease except for the purposes of winding up our affairs and liquidating. If we are forced to liquidate prior to an initial business combination, our public stockholders are entitled to share ratably in the trust account, based on the amount then held in the trust account, and any assets remaining available for distribution to them. Our sponsor, officers and directors have agreed to waive their rights to participate in any liquidation distribution occurring upon our failure to consummate an initial business combination with respect to the founder's common stock and private shares. Our sponsor, officers and directors will therefore not participate in any liquidation distribution with respect to such shares. They will, however, participate in any liquidation distribution with respect to any shares of common stock acquired in, or following, this offering.

Our stockholders have no conversion, preemptive or other subscription rights and there are no sinking fund or redemption provisions applicable to the shares of common stock, except that public stockholders have the right to sell their shares to us in a tender offer or have their shares of common stock converted to cash equal to their pro rata share of the trust account if they vote on the proposed business combination in connection with such business combination and the business combination is completed. Public stockholders who sell or convert their stock into their share of the trust account still have the right to exercise the warrants that they received as part of the units.

Preferred Stock

There are no shares of preferred stock outstanding. Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation authorizes the issuance of 1,000,000 shares of preferred stock with such designation, rights and preferences as may be determined from time to time by our board of directors. No shares of preferred stock are being issued or registered in this offering. Accordingly, our board of directors is empowered, without stockholder approval, to issue preferred stock with dividend, liquidation, conversion, voting or other rights which could adversely affect the voting power or other rights of the holders of common stock. However, the underwriting agreement prohibits us, prior to a business combination, from issuing preferred stock which participates in any manner in the proceeds of the trust account, or which votes as a class with the common stock on a business combination. We may issue some or all of the preferred stock to effect a business combination. In addition, the preferred stock could be utilized as a method of discouraging, delaying or preventing a change in control of us. Although we do not currently intend to issue any shares of preferred stock, we cannot assure you that we will not do so in the future.

Rights

Each holder of a right will receive one-tenth (1/10) of one share of common stock upon consummation of our initial business combination, even if the holder of such right redeemed all shares of common stock held by it in connection with the initial business combination. No additional consideration will be required to be paid by a holder of rights in order to receive its additional shares upon consummation of an initial business combination, as the consideration related thereto has been included in the unit purchase price paid for by investors in this offering. If we enter into a definitive agreement for a business combination in which we will not be the surviving entity, the definitive agreement will provide for the holders of rights to receive the same per share consideration the holders of the common stock will receive in the transaction on an as-converted into common stock basis, and each holder of a right will be required to affirmatively convert its rights in order to receive the 1/10 share underlying each right (without paying any additional consideration) upon consummation of the business combination. More specifically, the right holder will be required to indicate its election to convert the rights into underlying shares as well as to return the original rights certificates to us.

If we are unable to complete an initial business combination within the required time period and we liquidate the funds held in the trust account, holders of rights will not receive any such funds with respect to their rights, nor will they receive any distribution from our assets held outside of the trust account with respect to such rights, and the rights will expire worthless.

As soon as practicable upon the consummation of our initial business combination, we will direct registered holders of the rights to return their rights to our rights agent. Upon receipt of the rights, the rights agent will issue to the registered holder of such rights the number of full shares of common stock to which it is entitled. We will notify registered holders of the rights to deliver their rights to the rights agent promptly upon consummation of such business combination and have been informed by the rights agent that the process of exchanging their rights for shares of common stock should take no more than a matter of days. The foregoing exchange of rights is solely ministerial in nature and is not intended to provide us with any means of avoiding our obligation to issue the shares underlying the rights upon consummation of our initial business combination. Other than confirming that the rights delivered by a registered holder are valid, we will have no ability to avoid delivery of the shares underlying the rights. Nevertheless, there are no contractual penalties for failure to deliver securities to the holders of the rights upon consummation of an initial business combination. Additionally, in no event will we be required to net cash settle the rights.

The shares issuable upon exchange of the rights will be freely tradable (except to the extent held by affiliates of ours). We will not issue fractional shares upon exchange of the rights. If, upon exchange of the rights, a holder would be entitled to receive a fractional interest in a share, we will, upon exchange, either round up to the nearest whole number the number of shares to be issued to the right holder or otherwise comply with Section 155 of the Delaware General Corporation Law (which provides that Delaware companies shall either (1) arrange for the disposition of fractional interests by those entitled thereto, (2) pay in cash the fair value of fractions of a share as of the time when those entitled to receive such fractions are determined or (3) issue scrip or warrants in registered form (either represented by a certificate or uncertificated) or in bearer form (represented by a certificate) which shall entitle the holder to receive a full share upon the surrender of such scrip or warrants aggregating a full share). We will make the determination of how we are treating fractional shares at the time of our initial business combination and will include such determination in the proxy materials we will send to stockholders for their consideration of such initial business combination.

Warrants

No warrants are currently outstanding. Each warrant entitles the registered holder to purchase one share of common stock at a price of \$11.50 per share, subject to adjustment as discussed below, at any time commencing on the later of 30 days after the completion of an initial business combination or 12 months from the closing of this offering. However, no warrants will be exercisable for cash unless we have an effective and current registration statement covering the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants and a current prospectus relating to such shares of common stock. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if a registration statement covering the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the public warrants is not effective within a specified period following the consummation of our initial business combination, warrant holders may, until such time as there is an effective registration statement and during any period when we shall have failed to maintain an effective registration statement, exercise warrants on a cashless basis pursuant to the exemption provided by Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act, provided that such exemption is available. If that exemption, or another exemption, is not available, holders will not be able to exercise their warrants on a cashless basis. In such event, each holder would pay the exercise price by surrendering the warrants for that number of shares of common stock equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the product of the number of shares of common stock underlying the warrants, multiplied by the difference between the exercise price of the warrants and the "fair market value" (defined below) by (y) the fair market value. The "fair market value" for this purpose will mean the average reported last sale price of the shares of common stock for the 5 trading days ending on the trading day prior to the date of exercise. The warrants will expire on the fifth anniversary of our completion of an initial business combination, at 5:00 p.m., New York City time, or earlier upon redemption or liquidation.

The private warrants, as well as any warrants underlying additional units we issue to our sponsor, officers, directors or their affiliates in payment of working capital loans made to us, will be identical to the warrants underlying the units being offered by this prospectus except that such warrants will be exercisable for cash or on a cashless basis, at the holder's option, and will not be redeemable by us, in each case so long as they are still held by our sponsor or its permitted transferees.

We may call the warrants for redemption (excluding the private warrants and any warrants underlying additional units issued to our sponsor, officers or directors in payment of working capital loans made to us but including any outstanding warrants issued upon exercise of the unit purchase option issued to EarlyBirdCapital), in whole and not in part, at a price of \$0.01 per warrant,

- at any time after the warrants become exercisable,
- upon not less than 30 days' prior written notice of redemption to each warrant holder,
- if, and only if, the reported last sale price of the shares of common stock equals or exceeds \$18.00 per share (as adjusted for stock splits, stock dividends, reorganizations and recapitalizations), for any 20 trading days within a 30 trading day period ending on the third business day prior to the notice of redemption to warrant holders; and
- if, and only if, there is a current registration statement in effect with respect to the shares of common stock underlying such warrants.

The right to exercise will be forfeited unless the warrants are exercised prior to the date specified in the notice of redemption. On and after the redemption date, a record holder of a warrant will have no further rights except to receive the redemption price for such holder's warrant upon surrender of such warrant.

The redemption criteria for our warrants have been established at a price which is intended to provide warrant holders a reasonable premium to the initial exercise price and provide a sufficient differential between the then-prevailing share price and the warrant exercise price so that if the share price declines as a result of our redemption call, the redemption will not cause the share price to drop below the exercise price of the warrants.

If we call the warrants for redemption as described above, our management will have the option to require all holders that wish to exercise warrants to do so on a “cashless basis.” In such event, each holder would pay the exercise price by surrendering the warrants for that number of shares of common stock equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the product of the number of shares of common stock underlying the warrants, multiplied by the difference between the exercise price of the warrants and the “fair market value” (defined below) by (y) the fair market value. The “fair market value” shall mean the average reported last sale price of the shares of common stock for the 5 trading days ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which the notice of redemption is sent to the holders of warrants.

The warrants will be issued in registered form under a warrant agreement between Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, as warrant agent, and us. The warrant agreement provides that the terms of the warrants may be amended without the consent of any holder to cure any ambiguity or correct any defective provision, but requires the approval, by written consent or vote, of the holders of at least 50% of the then outstanding warrants (including the private warrants) in order to make any change that adversely affects the interests of the registered holders.

The exercise price and number of shares of common stock issuable on exercise of the warrants may be adjusted in certain circumstances including in the event of a stock dividend, extraordinary dividend or our recapitalization, reorganization, merger or consolidation. However, the warrants will not be adjusted for issuances of shares of common stock at a price below their respective exercise prices.

The warrants may be exercised upon surrender of the warrant certificate on or prior to the expiration date at the offices of the warrant agent, with the exercise form on the reverse side of the warrant certificate completed and executed as indicated, accompanied by full payment of the exercise price, by certified or official bank check payable to us, for the number of warrants being exercised. The warrant holders do not have the rights or privileges of holders of shares of common stock and any voting rights until they exercise their warrants and receive shares of common stock. After the issuance of shares of common stock upon exercise of the warrants, each holder will be entitled to one vote for each share held of record on all matters to be voted on by stockholders.

Under the terms of the warrant agreement, we have agreed to use our best efforts to have declared effective a prospectus relating to the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants and keep such prospectus current until the expiration of the warrants. However, we cannot assure you that we will be able to do so and, if we do not maintain a current prospectus relating to the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants, holders will be unable to exercise their warrants for cash and we will not be required to net cash settle or cash settle the warrant exercise.

Warrant holders may elect to be subject to a restriction on the exercise of their warrants such that an electing warrant holder would not be able to exercise their warrants to the extent that, after giving effect to such exercise, such holder would beneficially own in excess of 9.8% of the shares of common stock outstanding.

No fractional shares will be issued upon exercise of the warrants. If, upon exercise of the warrants, a holder would be entitled to receive a fractional interest in a share, we will, upon exercise, round up to the nearest whole number the number of shares of common stock to be issued to the warrant holder.

Purchase Option

We have agreed to sell to EarlyBirdCapital (and/or its designees) an option to purchase up to 500,000 units at \$11.50 per unit. The units issuable upon exercise of this option are identical to those offered by this prospectus. See “*Underwriting*.”

Dividends

We have not paid any cash dividends on our shares of common stock to date and do not intend to pay cash dividends prior to the completion of a business combination. The payment of cash dividends in the future will be dependent upon our revenues and earnings, if any, capital requirements and general financial condition subsequent to completion of a business combination. The payment of any dividends subsequent to a business combination will be within the discretion of our then board of directors. It is the present intention of our board of directors to retain all earnings, if any, for use in our business operations and, accordingly, our board does not anticipate declaring any dividends in the foreseeable future.

Our Transfer Agent, Rights Agent and Warrant Agent

The transfer agent for our securities and rights agent for our rights and warrant agent for our warrants is Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, 17 Battery Place, New York, New York 10004.

Listing of our Securities

We expect our units, common stock, rights and warrants quoted on Nasdaq under the symbols “BRACU,” “BRAC,” “BRACR” and “BRACW,” respectively. We anticipate that our units will be listed on Nasdaq on or promptly after the effective date of the registration statement. Following the date the shares of our common stock, rights and warrants are eligible to trade separately, we anticipate that the shares of our common stock, rights and warrants will be listed separately and as a unit on Nasdaq.

Certain Anti-Takeover Provisions of Delaware Law and our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation and By-Laws

Staggered board of directors

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides that our board of directors will be classified into three classes of directors of approximately equal size. As a result, in most circumstances, a person can gain control of our board only by successfully engaging in a proxy contest at two or more annual meetings.

Special meeting of stockholders

Our bylaws provide that special meetings of our stockholders may be called only by a majority vote of our board of directors, by our president or by our chairman or by our secretary at the request in writing of stockholders owning a majority of our issued and outstanding capital stock entitled to vote.

Advance notice requirements for stockholder proposals and director nominations

Our bylaws provide that stockholders seeking to bring business before our annual meeting of stockholders, or to nominate candidates for election as directors at our annual meeting of stockholders must provide timely notice of their intent in writing. To be timely, a stockholder’s notice will need to be delivered to our principal executive offices not later than the close of business on the 60th day nor earlier than the close of business on the 90th day prior to the scheduled date of the annual meeting of stockholders. In the event that less than 70 days’ notice or prior public disclosure of the date of the annual meeting of stockholders is given, a stockholder’s notice shall be timely if delivered to our principal executive offices not later than the 10th day following the day on which public announcement of the date of our annual meeting of stockholders is first made or sent by us. Our bylaws also specify certain requirements as to the form and content of a stockholders’ meeting. These provisions may preclude our stockholders from bringing matters before our annual meeting of stockholders or from making nominations for directors at our annual meeting of stockholders.

Authorized but unissued shares

Our authorized but unissued common stock and preferred stock are available for future issuances without stockholder approval and could be utilized for a variety of corporate purposes, including future offerings to raise additional capital, acquisitions and employee benefit plans. The existence of authorized but unissued and unreserved common stock and preferred stock could render more difficult or discourage an attempt to obtain control of us by means of a proxy contest, tender offer, merger or otherwise.

Exclusive Forum Selection

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation requires, to the fullest extent permitted by law, that derivative actions brought in our name, actions against directors, officers and employees for breach of fiduciary duty and other similar actions may be brought only in the Court of Chancery in the State of Delaware and, if brought outside of Delaware, the stockholder bringing the suit will be deemed to have consented to service of process on such stockholder’s counsel. Although we believe this provision benefits our company by providing increased consistency in the application of Delaware law in the types of lawsuits to which it applies, the provision may have the effect of discouraging lawsuits against our directors and officers.

Limitation on Liability and Indemnification of Directors and Officers

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides that our directors and officers will be indemnified by us to the fullest extent authorized by Delaware law as it now exists or may in the future be amended. In addition, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides that our directors will not be personally liable for monetary damages to us for breaches of their fiduciary duty as directors, unless they violated their duty of loyalty to us or our stockholders, acted in bad faith, knowingly or intentionally violated the law, authorized unlawful payments of dividends, unlawful stock purchases or unlawful redemptions, or derived an improper personal benefit from their actions as directors.

Our bylaws also will permit us to secure insurance on behalf of any officer, director or employee for any liability arising out of his or her actions, regardless of whether Delaware law would permit indemnification. We will purchase a policy of directors’ and officers’ liability insurance that insures our directors and officers against the cost of defense, settlement or payment of a judgment in some circumstances and insures us against our obligations to indemnify the directors and officers.

These provisions may discourage stockholders from bringing a lawsuit against our directors for breach of their fiduciary duty. These provisions also may have the effect of reducing the likelihood of derivative litigation against directors and officers, even though such an action, if successful, might otherwise benefit us and our stockholders. Furthermore, a stockholder's investment may be adversely affected to the extent we pay the costs of settlement and damage awards against directors and officers pursuant to these indemnification provisions. We believe that these provisions, the insurance and the indemnity agreements are necessary to attract and retain talented and experienced directors and officers.

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to our directors, officers and controlling persons pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, we have been advised that in the opinion of the SEC such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable.

SHARES ELIGIBLE FOR FUTURE SALE

Immediately after this offering, we will have 12,850,000 shares of common stock outstanding, or 14,762,500 shares if the over-allotment option is exercised in full (in each case, excluding shares underlying rights to be sold in this offering). Of these shares, the 10,000,000 shares sold in this offering, or 11,500,000 shares if the over-allotment option is exercised in full, will be freely tradable without restriction or further registration under the Securities Act, except for any shares purchased by one of our affiliates within the meaning of Rule 144 under the Securities Act. All of the remaining shares are restricted securities under Rule 144, in that they were issued in private transactions not involving a public offering. All of those shares have been placed in escrow and will not be transferable until they are released except in limited circumstances described elsewhere in this prospectus.

Rule 144

A person who has beneficially owned restricted shares of common stock, rights or warrants for at least six months would be entitled to sell their securities provided that (i) such person is not deemed to have been one of our affiliates at the time of, or at any time during the three months preceding, a sale and (ii) we are subject to the Exchange Act periodic reporting requirements for at least three months before the sale. Persons who have beneficially owned restricted shares of common stock for at least six months but who are our affiliates at the time of, or any time during the three months preceding, a sale, would be subject to additional restrictions, by which such person would be entitled to sell within any three-month period a number of shares that does not exceed the greater of either of the following:

- 1% of the number of shares of common stock then outstanding, which will equal 128,500 shares immediately after this offering (or 147,625 if the over-allotment option is exercised in full); and
- the average weekly trading volume of the shares of common stock during the four calendar weeks preceding the filing of a notice on Form 144 with respect to the sale.

Sales under Rule 144 are also limited by manner of sale provisions and notice requirements and to the availability of current public information about us.

Restrictions on the Use of Rule 144 by Shell Companies or Former Shell Companies

Historically, the SEC staff had taken the position that Rule 144 is not available for the resale of securities initially issued by companies that are, or previously were, blank check companies, like us. The SEC has codified and expanded this position in the amendments discussed above by prohibiting the use of Rule 144 for resale of securities issued by any shell companies (other than business combination related shell companies) or any issuer that has been at any time previously a shell company. The SEC has provided an important exception to this prohibition, however, if the following conditions are met:

- the issuer of the securities that was formerly a shell company has ceased to be a shell company;
- the issuer of the securities is subject to the reporting requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act;
- the issuer of the securities has filed all Exchange Act reports and material required to be filed, as applicable, during the preceding 12 months (or such shorter period that the issuer was required to file such reports and materials), other than Form 8-K reports; and
- at least one year has elapsed from the time that the issuer filed current Form 10 type information with the SEC reflecting its status as an entity that is not a shell company.

As a result, it is likely that pursuant to Rule 144, our sponsor will be able to sell its founders' shares freely without registration one year after we have completed our initial business combination assuming it is not an affiliate of ours at that time.

Registration Rights

The holders of our founders' shares issued and outstanding on the date of this prospectus, as well as the holders of the private units and any units our sponsor, officers, directors or their affiliates may be issued in payment of working capital loans made to us (and all underlying securities), will be entitled to registration rights pursuant to an agreement to be signed prior to or on the effective date of this offering. The holders of a majority of these securities are entitled to make up to two demands that we register such securities. The holders of the majority of the founders' shares can elect to exercise these registration rights at any time commencing three months prior to the date on which these shares of common stock are to be released from escrow. The holders of a majority of the private units and units issued to our sponsor, officers, directors or their affiliates in payment of working capital loans made to us (or underlying securities) can elect to exercise these registration rights at any time after we consummate a business combination. In addition, the holders have certain "piggy-back" registration rights with respect to registration statements filed subsequent to our consummation of a business combination. We will bear the expenses incurred in connection with the filing of any such registration statements.

MATERIAL U.S. FEDERAL TAX CONSIDERATIONS

The following are the material U.S. federal income and estate tax considerations with respect to your ownership and disposition of our units or components thereof, which we refer to collectively as our securities, assuming you purchase the securities in this offering and will hold them as capital assets within the meaning of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”).

This discussion does not address all of the U.S. federal income and estate tax considerations that may be relevant to you in light of your particular circumstances, and it does not describe all of the tax consequences that may be relevant to persons subject to special rules, such as:

- certain financial institutions;
- insurance companies;
- dealers and traders in securities or foreign currencies;
- persons holding our securities as part of a hedge, straddle, conversion transaction or other integrated transaction;
- former citizens or residents of the United States;
- U.S. persons whose functional currency for U.S. federal income tax purposes is not the U.S. dollar;
- partnerships or other entities classified as partnerships for U.S. federal income tax purposes;
- persons liable for the alternative minimum tax; and
- tax-exempt organizations.

The following does not discuss any aspect of state, local or non-U.S. taxation. This discussion is based on current provisions of the Code, Treasury regulations, judicial opinions, published positions of the U.S. Internal Revenue Service (“IRS”) and all other applicable authorities, all of which are subject to change, possibly with retroactive effect.

If an entity that is treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes holds our securities, the tax treatment of a partner will generally depend on the status of the partner and the activities of the entity. If you are a partner in such an entity, you should consult your tax advisor.

WE URGE PROSPECTIVE INVESTORS TO CONSULT THEIR TAX ADVISORS REGARDING THE U.S. FEDERAL, STATE, LOCAL AND NON-U.S. INCOME, ESTATE AND OTHER TAX CONSIDERATIONS WITH RESPECT TO ACQUIRING, HOLDING AND DISPOSING OF OUR SECURITIES.

Each unit will be treated for U.S. federal income tax purposes as an investment unit consisting of one share of our common stock and one half of a warrant to acquire one share of our common stock, subject to adjustment. In determining your basis for the common stock and one half warrant composing a unit, you should allocate your purchase price for the unit between the components on the basis of their relative fair market values at the time of issuance.

Personal Holding Company Status

We could be subject to United States federal income tax at rates in excess of those generally applicable to corporations on a portion of our income if we are determined to be a personal holding company, or PHC, for United States federal income tax purposes. A U.S. corporation will generally be classified as a PHC for United States federal income tax purposes in a given taxable year if (i) at any time during the last half of such taxable year, five or fewer individuals (without regard to their citizenship or residency and including as individuals for this purpose certain entities such as certain tax-exempt organizations, pension funds, and charitable trusts) own or are deemed to own (pursuant to certain constructive ownership rules) more than 50% of the stock of the corporation by value and (ii) at least 60% of the corporation’s adjusted ordinary gross income, as determined for United States federal income tax purposes, for such taxable year consists of PHC income (which includes, among other things, dividends, interest, certain royalties, annuities and, under certain circumstances, rents).

Depending on the date and size of our initial business combination, it is possible that at least 60% of our adjusted ordinary gross income may consist of PHC income as discussed above. In addition, depending on the concentration of our stock in the hands of individuals, including the members of our sponsor and certain tax-exempt organizations, pension funds, and charitable trusts, it is possible that more than 50% of our stock will be owned or deemed owned (pursuant to the constructive ownership rules) by such persons during the last half of a taxable year. Thus, no assurance can be given that we will not become a PHC following this offering or in the future. If we are or were to become a PHC in a given taxable year, we would be subject to an additional PHC tax, currently 20%, on our undistributed taxable income, subject to certain adjustments.

U.S. Holders

This section is addressed to U.S. holders of our securities. For purposes of this discussion, you are a “U.S. holder” if you are a beneficial owner of a security that is:

- an individual citizen or resident of the United States for U.S. federal income tax purposes;
- a corporation, or other entity taxable as a corporation, created or organized in, or under the laws of, the United States or any state thereof or the District of Columbia; or
- an estate or trust the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source.

Dividends and Distributions

As discussed under “Dividend Policy” above, we do not anticipate that any dividends will be paid in the foreseeable future. In the event that we do make distributions on our common stock, such distributions generally will be treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes to the extent of our current or accumulated earnings and profits. Distributions in excess of our current or accumulated earnings and profits generally will first reduce your basis in the common stock (but not below zero) and then will be treated as gain realized on the sale or other disposition of the common stock (as described in the first paragraph under “— Sale or Other Disposition or Conversion of Common Stock” below).

The conversion feature of the common stock described under “Proposed Business — Effecting a Business Combination — Conversion Rights” may be viewed as a position with respect to substantially similar or related property which diminishes your risk of loss and thereby affects your ability to satisfy the holding period requirements for the dividends received deduction or the preferential tax rate on qualified dividend income with respect to the time period prior to the approval of an initial business combination.

Sale or Other Disposition or Conversion of Common Stock

Gain or loss you realize on the sale or other disposition of our common stock (other than conversion into cash but including a liquidation in the event we do not consummate a business combination within the required time) will be capital gain or loss. The amount of your gain or loss will be equal to the difference between your tax basis in the common stock disposed of and the amount realized on the disposition. The deductibility of capital losses is subject to limitations. Any capital gain or loss you realize on a sale or other disposition of our common stock will generally be long-term capital gain or loss if your holding period for the common stock is more than one year. However, the conversion feature of the common stock described under “Proposed Business — Effecting a Business Combination — Conversion Rights” could affect your ability to satisfy the holding period requirements for the long-term capital gain tax rate with respect to the time period prior to the approval of an initial business combination.

If you convert your common stock into a right to receive cash as described in “Proposed Business — Effecting a Business Combination — Conversion Rights,” the conversion generally will be treated as a sale of common stock described in the preceding paragraph (rather than as a dividend or distribution). The conversion will, however, be treated as a dividend or distribution and taxed as described in “— Dividends and Distributions” above if your percentage ownership in us (including shares that you are deemed to own under certain attribution rules, such as the shares into which the warrants are exercisable) after the conversion is not meaningfully reduced from what your percentage ownership was prior to the conversion. If you have a relatively minimal stock interest and, taking into account the effect of conversion by other stockholders, your percentage ownership in us is reduced as a result of the conversion, you may be regarded as having suffered a meaningful reduction in interest. For example, the IRS has ruled that any reduction in the stockholder’s proportionate interest will constitute a “meaningful reduction” in a transaction in which a holder held less than 1% of the shares of a corporation and did not have management control over the corporation. You should consult your own tax advisor as to whether conversion of your common stock will be treated as a sale or as a dividend under the Code and, if you actually or constructively own 5% (or, if our stock is not then publicly traded, 1%) or more of our common stock before conversion, whether you are subject to special reporting requirements with respect to such conversion.

Sale or Other Disposition, Exercise or Expiration of Warrants or Rights

Upon the sale or other disposition of a warrant (other than by exercise) or our rights, you will generally recognize capital gain or loss equal to the difference between the amount realized on the sale or other disposition and your tax basis in the warrant or right (as the case may be). This capital gain or loss will be long-term capital gain or loss if, at the time of the sale or other disposition, the warrant or right has been held by you for more than one year. The deductibility of capital losses is subject to limitations.

With respect to the warrants, in general, you will not be required to recognize income, gain or loss upon exercise of a warrant for its exercise price. Your basis in a share of common stock received upon exercise will be equal to the sum of (1) your basis in the warrant and (2) the exercise price of the warrant. Your holding period in the shares received upon exercise will commence on the day after you exercise the warrants. Although there is no direct legal authority as to the U.S. federal income tax treatment of an exercise of a warrant on a cashless basis, we intend to take the position that such exercise will not be taxable, either because the exercise is not a gain realization event or because it qualifies as a tax-free recapitalization. In the former case, the holding period of the common stock should commence on the day after the warrant is exercised. In the latter case, the holding period of the common stock would include the holding period of the exercised warrants. However, our position is not binding on the IRS and the IRS may treat a cashless exercise of a warrant as a taxable exchange. You are urged to consult your own tax advisor as to the consequences of an exercise of a warrant on a cashless basis.

If a warrant expires without being exercised, you will recognize a capital loss in an amount equal to your basis in the warrant. Such loss will be long-term capital loss if, at the time of the expiration, the warrant has been held by you for more than one year. The deductibility of capital losses is subject to limitations.

With respect to the rights, in general, you should not recognize gain or loss upon the acquisition of common stock pursuant to the rights. The tax basis of common stock acquired pursuant to the rights should be equal to your tax basis in such rights. The holding period of such common stock should begin on the day after the receipt of such common stock pursuant to such rights. The tax treatment of a right that expires worthless is unclear. Holders of rights should consult their own tax advisors regarding the tax treatment of any losses that result if the rights expire worthless.

Constructive Dividends on Warrants

As discussed under “Dividend Policy” above, we do not anticipate that any dividends will be paid in the foreseeable future. If at any time during the period you hold warrants, however, we were to pay a taxable dividend to our stockholders and, in accordance with the anti-dilution provisions of the warrants, the conversion rate of the warrants were increased, that increase would be deemed to be the payment of a taxable dividend to you to the extent of our earnings and profits, notwithstanding the fact that you will not receive a cash payment. If the conversion rate is adjusted in certain other circumstances (or in certain circumstances, there is a failure to make adjustments), such adjustments may also result in the deemed payment of a taxable dividend to you. You should consult your tax advisor regarding the proper treatment of any adjustments to the warrants.

Unearned Income Medicare Tax

A 3.8% Medicare contribution tax will generally apply to all or some portion of the net investment income of a U.S. holder that is an individual with adjusted gross income that exceeds a threshold amount (\$250,000 if married filing jointly or if considered a “surviving spouse” for federal income tax purposes, \$125,000 if married filing separately, and \$200,000 in other cases). This 3.8% tax will also apply to all or some portion of the undistributed net investment income of certain U.S. holders that are estates and trusts. For these purposes, dividends and gains from the taxable dispositions of the common stock, rights and warrants will generally be taken into account in computing such a U.S. holder’s net investment income.

Information Reporting and Backup Withholding

Information returns may be filed with the IRS with respect to dividends or other distributions we may pay to you and proceeds from the sale of your shares of common stock, rights or warrants. You will be subject to backup withholding on these payments if you fail to provide your taxpayer identification number to the paying agent and comply with certain certification procedures or otherwise establish an exemption from backup withholding. Backup withholding is not an additional tax. Any amounts withheld with respect to your shares of common stock, rights or warrants under the backup withholding rules will be refunded to you or credited against your United States federal income tax liability, if any, by the IRS provided that certain required information is furnished to the IRS in a timely manner.

Non-U.S. Holders

This section is addressed to non-U.S. holders of the securities. For purposes of this discussion, a “non-U.S. holder” is a beneficial owner of a security (other than an entity treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes) that is not a U.S. holder.

Dividends and Distributions

As discussed under “Dividend Policy” above, we do not anticipate that any dividends will be paid in the foreseeable future. If, however, we were to pay taxable dividends to you with respect to your shares of common stock (including any deemed distributions treated as a dividend on the warrants, as described in “— Constructive Dividends on Warrants” below), those dividends would generally be subject to United States withholding tax at a rate of 30% of the gross amount, unless you are eligible for a reduced rate of withholding tax under an applicable income tax treaty and you provide proper certification of your eligibility for such reduced rate (usually on an IRS Form W-8BEN or Form W-8BEN-E). A distribution generally will constitute a dividend for U.S. federal income tax purposes to the extent of our current or accumulated earnings and profits as determined under the Code. Any distribution not constituting a dividend generally will be treated first as reducing your basis in your shares of common stock and, to the extent it exceeds your basis, as gain from the disposition of your shares of common stock treated as described under “Sale or Other Disposition of Common Stock or Warrants” below. The full amount of any distributions to you may, however, be subject to United States withholding tax unless the applicable withholding agent elects to withhold a lesser amount based on a reasonable estimate of the amount of the distribution that would be treated as a dividend. In addition, if we determine that we are likely to be classified as a “United States real property holding corporation” (see “Sale or Other Disposition of Common Stock or Warrants” below), we will withhold at least 10% of any distribution that exceeds our current and accumulated earnings and profits as provided by the Code.

Dividends we pay to you that are effectively connected with your conduct of a trade or business within the United States (and, if certain income tax treaties apply, are attributable to a United States permanent establishment maintained by you) generally will not be subject to United States withholding tax if you comply with applicable certification and disclosure requirements (usually by providing an IRS Form W-8ECI). Instead, such dividends generally will be subject to United States federal income tax, net of certain deductions, at the same graduated individual or corporate rates applicable to United States persons. If you are a corporation, effectively connected income may also be subject to a “branch profits tax” at a rate of 30% (or such lower rate as may be specified by an applicable income tax treaty).

Exercise of Warrants

You generally will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax on the exercise of the warrants into shares of common stock. However, if a cashless exercise of warrants results in a taxable exchange, as described in “— U.S. Holders — Sale or Other Disposition, Exercise or Expiration of Warrants,” the rules described below under “Sale or Other Disposition of Common Stock or Warrants” would apply.

Sale or Other Disposition of Common Stock, Rights or Warrants

You generally will not be subject to United States federal income tax on any gain realized upon the sale, exchange or other disposition of our common stock (which would include a dissolution and liquidation in the event we do not consummate an initial business combination within the required timeframe), rights or warrants (including an expiration or redemption of our warrants), unless:

- the gain is effectively connected with your conduct of a trade or business within the United States (and, under certain income tax treaties, is attributable to a United States permanent establishment you maintain);
- you are an individual, you hold your shares of common stock, rights or warrants as capital assets, you are present in the United States for 183 days or more in the taxable year of disposition and you meet other conditions, and you are not eligible for relief under an applicable income tax treaty; or
- we are or have been a “United States real property holding corporation” for United States federal income tax purposes and, in the case where the shares of our common stock are regularly traded on an established securities market, you hold or have held, directly or indirectly, at any time within the shorter of the five-year period preceding disposition or your holding period for your shares of common stock, rights or warrants, more than 5% of our common stock. Special rules may apply to the determination of the 5% threshold in the case of a holder of a right or warrant. You are urged to consult your own tax advisors regarding the effect of holding the rights or warrants on the calculation of such 5% threshold. We will be classified as a United States real property holding corporation if the fair market value of our “United States real property interests” equals or exceeds 50% of the sum of (1) the fair market value of our United States real property interests, (2) the fair market value of our non-United States real property interests and (3) the fair market value of any other of our assets which are used or held for use in our trade or business. Although we currently are not a United States real property holding corporation, we cannot determine whether we will be a United States real property holding corporation in the future until we consummate an initial business combination.

Gain that is effectively connected with your conduct of a trade or business within the United States generally will be subject to United States federal income tax, net of certain deductions, at the same rates applicable to United States persons. If you are a corporation, the branch profits tax also may apply to such effectively connected gain. If the gain from the sale or disposition of your shares of common stock, rights or warrants is effectively connected with your conduct of a trade or business in the United States but under an applicable income tax treaty is not attributable to a permanent establishment you maintain in the United States, your gain may be exempt from United States tax under the treaty. If you are described in the second bullet point above, you generally will be subject to United States federal income tax at a rate of 30% on the gain realized, although the gain may be offset by some United States source capital losses realized during the same taxable year. If you are described in the third bullet point above, gain recognized by you on the sale, exchange or other disposition of shares of common stock or warrants will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on a net income basis at normal graduated U.S. federal income tax rates. In addition, a buyer of your shares of common stock, rights or warrants may be required to withhold United States income tax at a rate of 10% of the amount realized upon such disposition.

If you convert your common stock into a right to receive cash as described in “Proposed Business — Effecting a Business Combination — Conversion Rights,” the conversion generally will be treated as a sale of common stock rather than as a dividend or distribution. The conversion will, however, be treated as a dividend or distribution and taxed as described in “Dividends and Distributions” if your percentage ownership in us (including shares that you are deemed to own under certain attribution rules, such as the shares into which the warrants are exercisable) after the conversion is not meaningfully reduced from what your percentage ownership was prior to the conversion. See the discussion in “— U.S. Holders — Sale or Other Disposition or Conversion of Common Stock.” You should consult your own tax advisor as to whether conversion of your common stock will be treated as a sale or as a dividend under the Code.

Constructive Dividends on Warrants

As discussed under “Dividend Policy” above, we do not anticipate that any dividends will be paid in the foreseeable future. If at any time during the period you hold warrants, however, we were to pay a taxable dividend to our stockholders and, in accordance with the anti-dilution provisions of the warrants, the conversion rate of the warrants were increased, that increase would be deemed to be the payment of a taxable dividend to you to the extent of our earnings and profits, notwithstanding the fact that you will not receive a cash payment. If the conversion rate is adjusted in certain other circumstances (or in certain circumstances, there is a failure to make adjustments), such adjustments may also result in the deemed payment of a taxable dividend to you. Any resulting withholding tax attributable to deemed dividends would be collected from other amounts payable or distributable to you. You should consult your tax advisor regarding the proper treatment of any adjustments to the warrants.

Information Reporting and Backup Withholding

We must report annually to the IRS the amount of dividends or other distributions we may pay to you on your shares of common stock and the amount of tax we withhold on any such distributions regardless of whether withholding is required. The IRS may make copies of the information returns reporting those dividends and amounts withheld available to the tax authorities in the country in which you reside pursuant to the provisions of an applicable income tax treaty or exchange of information treaty.

The United States imposes backup withholding on dividends and certain other types of payments to United States persons. You will not be subject to backup withholding on dividends you receive on your shares of common stock if you provide proper certification (usually on an IRS Form W-8BEN or Form W-8BEN-E) of your status as a non-United States person or you are a corporation or one of several types of entities and organizations that qualify for exemption (an “exempt recipient”).

Information reporting and backup withholding generally are not required with respect to the amount of any proceeds from the sale of your shares of common stock, rights or warrants outside the United States through a foreign office of a foreign broker that does not have certain specified connections to the United States. However, if you sell your shares of common stock, rights or warrants through a United States broker or the United States office of a foreign broker, the broker will be required to report to the IRS the amount of proceeds paid to you unless you provide appropriate certification (usually on an IRS Form W-8BEN or Form W-8BEN-E) to the broker of your status as a non-United States person or you are an exempt recipient. Information reporting also would apply if you sell your shares of common stock, rights or warrants through a foreign broker deriving more than a specified percentage of its income from United States sources or having certain other connections to the United States.

Backup withholding is not an additional tax. Any amounts withheld with respect to your shares of common stock, rights or warrants under the backup withholding rules will be refunded to you or credited against your United States federal income tax liability, if any, by the IRS provided that certain required information is furnished to the IRS in a timely manner.

Estate Tax

Common stock owned or treated as owned by an individual who is not a citizen or resident (as defined for United States federal estate tax purposes) of the United States at the time of his or her death, or by an entity the property of which is potentially includible in such an individual’s gross estate, will be included in the individual’s gross estate for United States federal estate tax purposes and therefore may be subject to United States federal estate tax unless an applicable estate tax treaty provides otherwise. The foregoing may also apply to rights or warrants.

Unearned Income Medicare Tax

If you are a foreign estate or trust, you may be subject to the Medicare contribution tax described under “U.S. Holders — Unearned Income Medicare Tax” above. Non-U.S. holders should consult their tax advisors regarding the possible implications of the Medicare contribution tax on their investments in the units.

FATCA

A 30% withholding tax will be imposed on payments to certain foreign entities of U.S.-source dividends and the gross proceeds of dispositions of stock (including our securities) that can produce U.S.-source dividends, unless various U.S. information reporting and due diligence requirements (generally relating to ownership by U.S. persons of interests in or accounts with those entities) have been satisfied or an exemption has otherwise been established. This withholding tax will not apply, however, to payments of gross proceeds from dispositions of stock before January 1, 2017. Potential investors should consult their tax advisors regarding the possible implications of this withholding tax on their investment in the units.

UNDERWRITING

We are offering the units described in this prospectus through the underwriters named below. EarlyBirdCapital, Inc. is acting as representative of the underwriters. We have entered into an underwriting agreement with the representative. Subject to the terms and conditions of the underwriting agreement, the underwriters have agreed to purchase, and we have agreed to sell to the underwriters, the number of units listed next to each of its name in the following table:

Underwriter	Number of Units
EarlyBirdCapital, Inc.	
Chardan Capital Markets, LLC	
I-Bankers Securities, Inc.	
Total	10,000,000

The underwriting agreement provides that the underwriters must buy all of the units if they buy any of them. However, the underwriters are not required to purchase the units covered by the option to purchase additional units as described below.

Our units are offered subject to a number of conditions, including:

- ▶ receipt and acceptance of our units by the underwriters; and
- ▶ the underwriters' right to reject orders in whole or in part.

In connection with this offering, the underwriters or securities dealers may distribute prospectuses electronically.

Option To Purchase Additional Units

We have granted the underwriters an option to buy up to an aggregate of 1,500,000 additional units. The underwriters have 45 days from the date of this prospectus to exercise this option. If the underwriters exercise this option, they will purchase additional units approximately in proportion to the amounts specified in the table above.

Underwriting Discount

Units sold by the underwriters to the public will initially be offered at the initial offering price set forth on the cover of this prospectus. Any units sold by the underwriters to securities dealers may be sold at a discount of up to \$ per unit from the initial public offering price and the dealers may reallow a concession not in excess of \$ per unit to other dealers. Sales of units made outside of the United States may be made by affiliates of the underwriters. If all the units are not sold at the initial public offering price, the representative may change the offering price and the other selling terms. Upon execution of the underwriting agreement, the underwriters will be obligated to purchase the units at the prices and upon the terms stated therein.

The following table shows the per unit and total underwriting discount we will pay to the underwriters assuming both no exercise and full exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase up to 1,500,000 additional units.

	No Exercise	Full Exercise
Per Unit	\$ 0.20	\$ 0.20
Total	\$ 2,000,000	\$ 2,300,000

We estimate that the total expenses of the offering payable by us, not including the underwriting discount, will be approximately \$500,000. In addition, we have agreed to pay for the FINRA-related fees and expenses of the underwriters' legal counsel, not to exceed \$15,000, the expenses of transaction "bibles" and lucite cube "mementos," not to exceed \$3,000, and the expenses of investigations and background checks, not to exceed \$24,500.

Indemnification

We have agreed to indemnify the underwriter against certain liabilities, including certain liabilities under the Securities Act. If we are unable to provide this indemnification, we have agreed to contribute to payments the underwriter may be required to make in respect of those liabilities.

NASDAQ Listing

We have applied to have our units listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol "BRACU" and, once the common stock, rights and warrants begin separate trading, to be listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbols "BRAC," "BRACR" and "BRACW," respectively.

Business Combination Marketing Agreement

We have engaged EarlyBirdCapital as an advisor in connection with our business combination to assist us in holding meetings with our shareholders to discuss the potential business combination and the target business' attributes, introduce us to potential investors that are interested in purchasing our securities, assist us in obtaining shareholder approval for the business combination and assist us with our press releases and public filings in connection with the business combination. We will pay EarlyBirdCapital a cash fee for such services upon the consummation of our initial business combination in an amount equal to 3.5% of the gross proceeds of this offering (exclusive of any applicable finders' fees which might become payable).

Purchase Option

We have agreed to sell to EarlyBirdCapital (and/or its designees), for \$100, an option to purchase up to a total of 500,000 units exercisable at \$11.50 per unit (or an aggregate exercise price of \$5,750,000) upon the closing of this offering. The purchase option may be exercised for cash or on a cashless basis, at the holder's option, at any time during the period commencing on the later of the first anniversary of the effective date of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part and the closing of our initial business combination and terminating on the fifth anniversary of such effectiveness date. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary, neither the option nor the warrants underlying the option shall be exercisable after the five year anniversary of the effective date of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part. The option and such units purchased pursuant to the option, as well as the shares of common stock underlying such units, the warrants included in such units and the shares of common stock that are issuable for the warrants included in such units have been deemed compensation by FINRA and are therefore subject to a lock-up for a period of 180 days immediately following the date of the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part pursuant to Rule 5110(g)(1) of FINRA's NASD Conduct Rules. Pursuant to FINRA Rule 5110(g)(1), these securities will not be the subject of any hedging, short sale, derivative, put or call transaction that would result in the economic disposition of the securities by any person for a period of 180 days immediately following the effective date of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part, nor may they be sold, transferred, assigned, pledged or hypothecated for a period of 180 days immediately following the effective date of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part except to any underwriter and selected dealer participating in the offering and their bona fide officers or partners. The option grants to holders demand and "piggy back" rights for periods of five and seven years, respectively, from the effective date of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part with respect to the registration under the Securities Act of the securities directly and indirectly issuable upon exercise of the option. We will bear all fees and expenses attendant to registering the securities, other than underwriting commissions, which will be paid for by the holders themselves. The exercise price and number of units issuable upon exercise of the option may be adjusted in certain circumstances including in the event of a stock dividend, or our recapitalization, reorganization, merger or consolidation. However, the option will not be adjusted for issuances of shares of common stock at a price below its exercise price. We will have no obligation to net cash settle the exercise of the purchase option or the rights or warrants underlying the purchase option. The holder of the purchase option will not be entitled to exercise the purchase option or the rights or warrants underlying the purchase option unless a registration statement covering the securities underlying the purchase option is effective or an exemption from registration is available. If the holder is unable to exercise the purchase option or underlying rights or warrants, the purchase option, rights or warrants, as applicable, will expire worthless.

The exercise price and number of units issuable upon exercise of the option (and the underlying securities) may be adjusted in certain circumstances including in the event of a stock dividend, or our recapitalization, reorganization, merger or consolidation. However, the option will not be adjusted for issuances of shares of common stock at a price below its exercise price.

Price Stabilization, Short Positions

In connection with this offering, the underwriters may engage in activities that stabilize, maintain or otherwise affect the price of units during and after this offering, including:

- ▶ stabilizing transactions;
- ▶ short sales;
- ▶ purchases to cover positions created by short sales;
- ▶ imposition of penalty bids; and
- ▶ syndicate covering transactions.

Stabilizing transactions consist of bids or purchases made for the purpose of preventing or retarding a decline in the market price of our units while this offering is in progress. Stabilization transactions permit bids to purchase the underlying security so long as the stabilizing bids do not exceed a specified maximum. These transactions may also include making short sales of our units, which involve the sale by the underwriters of a greater number of units than they are required to purchase in this offering and purchasing units on the open market to cover short positions created by short sales. Short sales may be “covered short sales,” which are short positions in an amount not greater than the underwriters’ option to purchase additional units referred to above, or may be “naked short sales,” which are short positions in excess of that amount.

The underwriters may close out any covered short position by either exercising their option, in whole or in part, or by purchasing units in the open market. In making this determination, the underwriters will consider, among other things, the price of units available for purchase in the open market as compared to the price at which they may purchase units through the over-allotment option.

Naked short sales are short sales made in excess of the over-allotment option. The underwriters must close out any naked short position by purchasing units in the open market. A naked short position is more likely to be created if the underwriters are concerned that there may be downward pressure on the price of the units in the open market that could adversely affect investors who purchased in this offering.

The underwriters also may impose a penalty bid. This occurs when a particular underwriter repays to the representative of the underwriters a portion of the underwriting discount received by it because the representative has repurchased units sold by or for the account of that underwriter in stabilizing or short covering transactions.

These stabilizing transactions, short sales, purchases to cover positions created by short sales, the imposition of penalty bids and syndicate covering transactions may have the effect of raising or maintaining the market price of our units or preventing or retarding a decline in the market price of our units. As a result of these activities, the price of our units may be higher than the price that otherwise might exist in the open market. The underwriters may carry out these transactions on the Nasdaq, in the over-the-counter market or otherwise. Neither we nor the underwriters make any representation or prediction as to the effect that the transactions described above may have on the price of the units. Neither we, nor the underwriters, make any representation that the underwriter will engage in these stabilization transactions or that any transaction, once commenced, will not be discontinued without notice.

Determination of Offering Price

Prior to this offering, there was no public market for our units. The initial public offering price will be determined by negotiation between us and the representative of the underwriters. The principal factors to be considered in determining the initial public offering price include:

- ▶ the information set forth in this prospectus and otherwise available to the representative;
- ▶ our history and prospects and the history and prospects for the industry in which we compete;
- ▶ our past and present financial performance;
- ▶ our prospects for future earnings and the present state of our development;
- ▶ the general condition of the securities market at the time of this offering;
- ▶ the recent market prices of, and demand for, publicly traded units of generally comparable companies; and

- ▶ other factors deemed relevant by the underwriters and us.

The estimated public offering price range set forth on the cover page of this preliminary prospectus is subject to change as a result of market conditions and other factors. Neither we nor the underwriters can assure investors that an active trading market will develop for our units, warrants or common stock or that the units will trade in the public market at or above the initial public offering price.

Affiliations

EarlyBirdCapital and its affiliates are full service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include securities trading, commercial and investment banking, financial advisory, investment management, investment research, principal investment, hedging, financing and brokerage activities. EarlyBirdCapital and its affiliates may from time to time in the future engage with us and perform services for us or in the ordinary course of their business for which they will receive customary fees and expenses. In the ordinary course of their various business activities, the underwriters and their respective affiliates may also make or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade debt and equity securities (or related derivative securities) and financial instruments (including bank loans) for their own account and for the accounts of their customers, and such investment and securities activities may involve securities and/or instruments of us. The underwriters and its affiliates may also make investment recommendations and/or publish or express independent research views in respect of these securities or instruments and may at any time hold, or recommend to clients that they acquire, long and/or short positions in these securities and instruments.

Additional Future Arrangements

We are not under any contractual obligation to engage any of the underwriters to provide any services for us after this offering, and have no present intent to do so. However, the underwriters may introduce us to potential target businesses or assist us in raising additional capital in the future. If any of the underwriters provide services to us after this offering, we may pay such underwriter fair and reasonable fees that would be determined at that time in an arm's length negotiation; provided that no agreement will be entered into with any underwriter and no fees for such services will be paid to any underwriter prior to the date that is 90 days from the date of this prospectus, unless FINRA determines that such payment would not be deemed underwriter's compensation in connection with this offering.

Electronic Distribution

A prospectus in electronic format may be made available on the Internet sites or through other online services maintained by the underwriters participating in this offering, or by their affiliates. In those cases, prospective investors may view offering terms online and, depending upon the particular underwriter, prospective investors may be allowed to place orders online. The underwriters may agree with us to allocate a specific number of units for sale to online brokerage account holders. Any such allocation for online distributions will be made by the underwriters on the same basis as other allocations. Other than the prospectus in electronic format, the information on any underwriter's website and any information contained in any other website maintained by an underwriter is not part of the prospectus or the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part, has not been approved and/or endorsed by us or any underwriter in its capacity as underwriter and should not be relied upon by investors.

Selling Restrictions

Canada

Resale Restrictions

We intend to distribute our securities in the Province of Ontario, Canada (the "Canadian Offering Jurisdiction") by way of a private placement and exempt from the requirement that we prepare and file a prospectus with the securities regulatory authorities in such Canadian Offering Jurisdiction. Any resale of our securities in Canada must be made under applicable securities laws that will vary depending on the relevant jurisdiction, and which may require resales to be made under available statutory exemptions or under a discretionary exemption granted by the applicable Canadian securities regulatory authority. Canadian resale restrictions in some circumstances may apply to resales of interests made outside of Canada. Canadian purchasers are advised to seek legal advice prior to any resale of our securities. We may never be a "reporting issuer", as such term is defined under applicable Canadian securities legislation, in any province or territory of Canada in which our securities will be offered and there currently is no public market for any of the securities in Canada, and one may never develop. Canadian investors are advised that we have no intention to file a prospectus or similar document with any securities regulatory authority in Canada qualifying the resale of the securities to the public in any province or territory in Canada.

Representations of Purchasers

A Canadian purchaser will be required to represent to us and the dealer from whom the purchase confirmation is received that:

- the purchaser is entitled under applicable provincial securities laws to purchase our securities without the benefit of a prospectus qualified under those securities laws;
- where required by law, that the purchaser is purchasing as principal and not as agent;
- the purchaser has reviewed the text above under Resale Restrictions; and
- the purchaser acknowledges and consents to the provision of specified information concerning its purchase of our securities to the regulatory authority that by law is entitled to collect the information.

Rights of Action — Ontario Purchasers Only

Under Ontario securities legislation, certain purchasers who purchase a security offered by this prospectus during the period of distribution will have a statutory right of action for damages, or while still the owner of our securities, for rescission against us in the event that this prospectus contains a misrepresentation without regard to whether the purchaser relied on the misrepresentation. The right of action for damages is exercisable not later than the earlier of 180 days from the date the purchaser first had knowledge of the facts giving rise to the cause of action and three years from the date on which payment is made for our securities. The right of action for rescission is exercisable not later than 180 days from the date on which payment is made for our securities. If a purchaser elects to exercise the right of action for rescission, the purchaser will have no right of action for damages against us. In no case will the amount recoverable in any action exceed the price at which our securities were offered to the purchaser and if the purchaser is shown to have purchased the securities with knowledge of the misrepresentation, we will have no liability. In the case of an action for damages, we will not be liable for all or any portion of the damages that are proven to not represent the depreciation in value of our securities as a result of the misrepresentation relied upon. These rights are in addition to, and without derogation from, any other rights or remedies available at law to an Ontario purchaser. The foregoing is a summary of the rights available to an Ontario purchaser. Ontario purchasers should refer to the complete text of the relevant statutory provisions.

Enforcement of Legal Rights

All of our directors and officers as well as the experts named herein are located outside of Canada and, as a result, it may not be possible for Canadian purchasers to effect service of process within Canada upon us or those persons. All of our assets and the assets of those persons are located outside of Canada and, as a result, it may not be possible to satisfy a judgment against us or those persons in Canada or to enforce a judgment obtained in Canadian courts against us or those persons outside of Canada.

Collection of Personal Information

If a Canadian purchaser is resident in or otherwise subject to the securities laws of the Province of Ontario, the Purchaser authorizes the indirect collection of personal information pertaining to the Canadian purchaser by the Ontario Securities Commission (the “OSC”) and each Canadian purchaser will be required to acknowledge and agree that the Canadian purchaser has been notified by us (i) of the delivery to the OSC of personal information pertaining to the Canadian purchaser, including, without limitation, the full name, residential address and telephone number of the Canadian purchaser, the number and type of securities purchased and the total purchase price paid in respect of the securities, (ii) that this information is being collected indirectly by the OSC under the authority granted to it in securities legislation, (iii) that this information is being collected for the purposes of the administration and enforcement of the securities legislation of Ontario, and (iv) that the title, business address and business telephone number of the public official in Ontario who can answer questions about the OSC’s indirect collection of the information is the Administrative Assistant to the Director of Corporate Finance, the Ontario Securities Commission, Suite 1903, Box 5520, Queen Street West, Toronto, Ontario, M5H 3S8, Telephone: (416) 593-8086, Facsimile: (416) 593-8252.

Notice to Prospective Investors in Australia

No placement document, prospectus, product disclosure statement or other disclosure document has been lodged with the Australian Securities and Investments Commission (“ASIC”), in relation to the offering. This prospectus does not constitute a prospectus, product disclosure statement or other disclosure document under the Corporations Act 2001 (the “Corporations Act”), and does not purport to include the information required for a prospectus, product disclosure statement or other disclosure document under the Corporations Act.

Any offer in Australia of the shares may only be made to persons (the “Exempt Investors”) who are “sophisticated investors” (within the meaning of section 708(8) of the Corporations Act), “professional investors” (within the meaning of section 708(11) of the Corporations Act) or otherwise pursuant to one or more exemptions contained in section 708 of the Corporations Act so that it is lawful to offer the shares without disclosure to investors under Chapter 6D of the Corporations Act.

The shares applied for by Exempt Investors in Australia must not be offered for sale in Australia in the period of 12 months after the date of allotment under the offering, except in circumstances where disclosure to investors under Chapter 6D of the Corporations Act would not be required pursuant to an exemption under section 708 of the Corporations Act or otherwise or where the offer is pursuant to a disclosure document which complies with Chapter 6D of the Corporations Act. Any person acquiring shares must observe such Australian on-sale restrictions.

This prospectus contains general information only and does not take account of the investment objectives, financial situation or particular needs of any particular person. It does not contain any securities recommendations or financial product advice. Before making an investment decision, investors need to consider whether the information in this prospectus is appropriate to their needs, objectives and circumstances, and, if necessary, seek expert advice on those matters.

Notice to Prospective Investors in the Dubai International Financial Centre

This prospectus relates to an Exempt Offer in accordance with the Offered Securities Rules of the Dubai Financial Services Authority (“DFSA”). This prospectus is intended for distribution only to persons of a type specified in the Offered Securities Rules of the DFSA. It must not be delivered to, or relied on by, any other person. The DFSA has no responsibility for reviewing or verifying any documents in connection with Exempt Offers. The DFSA has not approved this prospectus nor taken steps to verify the information set forth herein and has no responsibility for the prospectus. The shares to which this prospectus relates may be illiquid and/or subject to restrictions on their resale. Prospective purchasers of the shares offered should conduct their own due diligence on the shares. If you do not understand the contents of this prospectus you should consult an authorized financial advisor.

Notice to Prospective Investors in the European Economic Area

In relation to each member state of the European Economic Area that has implemented the Prospectus Directive (each, a “relevant member state”), with effect from and including the date on which the Prospectus Directive is implemented in that relevant member state (the “relevant implementation date”), an offer of units described in this prospectus may not be made to the public in that relevant member state prior to the publication of a prospectus in relation to the units that has been approved by the competent authority in that relevant member state or, where appropriate, approved in another relevant member state and notified to the competent authority in that relevant member state, all in accordance with the Prospectus Directive, except that, with effect from and including the relevant implementation date, an offer of our units may be made to the public in that relevant member state at any time:

- ▶ to any legal entity which is a qualified investor as defined in the Prospectus Directive;
- ▶ to fewer than 100, or, if the relevant member state has implemented the relevant provisions of the 2010 PD Amending Directive, 150, natural or legal persons (other than qualified investors as defined in the Prospectus Directive), as permitted under the Prospectus Directive, subject to obtaining the prior consent of the relevant Dealer or Dealers nominated by the issuer for any such offer; or natural or legal persons (other than qualified investors as defined below) subject to obtaining the prior consent of the underwriter for any such offer; or
- ▶ in any other circumstances that do not require the publication by us of a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive.

Each purchaser of units described in this prospectus located within a relevant member state will be deemed to have represented, acknowledged and agreed that it is a “qualified investor” within the meaning of Article 2(1)(e) of the Prospectus Directive.

For the purpose of this provision, the expression an “offer to the public” in any relevant member state means the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and the units to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe for the units, as the expression may be varied in that member state by any measure implementing the Prospectus Directive in that member state, and the expression “Prospectus Directive” means Directive 2003/71/EC (and amendments thereto, including the PD 2010 Amending Directive to the extent implemented by the relevant member state) and includes any relevant implementing measure in each relevant member state, and the expression 2010 PD Amending Directive means Directive 2010/73/EU.

We have not authorized and do not authorize the making of any offer of units through any financial intermediary on their behalf, other than offers made by the underwriters with a view to the final placement of the units as contemplated in this prospectus. Accordingly, no purchaser of the units, other than the underwriters, is authorized to make any further offer of the units on behalf of us or the underwriters.

Notice to Prospective Investors in Switzerland

The shares may not be publicly offered in Switzerland and will not be listed on the SIX Swiss Exchange (“SIX”) or on any other stock exchange or regulated trading facility in Switzerland. This document has been prepared without regard to the disclosure standards for issuance prospectuses under art. 652a or art. 1156 of the Swiss Code of Obligations or the disclosure standards for listing prospectuses under art. 27 ff. of the SIX Listing Rules or the listing rules of any other stock exchange or regulated trading facility in Switzerland. Neither this document nor any other offering or marketing material relating to the shares or the offering may be publicly distributed or otherwise made publicly available in Switzerland.

Neither this document nor any other offering or marketing material relating to the offering, the Company, the shares have been or will be filed with or approved by any Swiss regulatory authority. In particular, this document will not be filed with, and the offer of shares will not be supervised by, the Swiss Financial Market Supervisory Authority FINMA (FINMA), and the offer of shares has not been and will not be authorized under the Swiss Federal Act on Collective Investment Schemes (“CISA”). The investor protection afforded to acquirers of interests in collective investment schemes under the CISA does not extend to acquirers of shares.

Notice to Prospective Investors in the United Kingdom

This prospectus is only being distributed to, and is only directed at, persons in the United Kingdom that are qualified investors within the meaning of Article 2(1)(e) of the Prospectus Directive that are also (i) investment professionals falling within Article 19(5) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005 (the “Order”) or (ii) high net worth entities, and other persons to whom it may lawfully be communicated, falling within Article 49(2)(a) to (d) of the Order (all such persons together being referred to as a “relevant person”). The units are only available to, and any invitation, offer or agreement to purchase or otherwise acquire such units will be engaged in only with, relevant persons. This prospectus and its contents are confidential and should not be distributed, published or reproduced (in whole or in part) or disclosed by recipients to any other persons in the United Kingdom. Any person in the United Kingdom that is not a relevant person should not act or rely on this document or any of its contents.

Notice to Prospective Investors in France

Neither this prospectus nor any other offering material relating to the units described in this prospectus has been submitted to the clearance procedures of the Autorité des Marchés Financiers or by the competent authority of another member state of the European Economic Area and notified to the Autorité des Marchés Financiers. The units have not been offered or sold and will not be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, to the public in France. Neither this prospectus nor any other offering material relating to the units has been or will be:

- ▶ released, issued, distributed or caused to be released, issued or distributed to the public in France; or
- ▶ used in connection with any offer for subscription or sale of the units to the public in France.

Such offers, sales and distributions will be made in France only:

- ▶ to qualified investors (investisseurs qualifiés) and/or to a restricted circle of investors (cercle restreint d’investisseurs), in each case investing for their own account, all as defined in, and in accordance with, Article L.411-2, D.411-1, D.411-2, D.734-1, D.744-1, D.754-1 and D.764-1 of the French Code monétaire et financier;
- ▶ to investment services providers authorized to engage in portfolio management on behalf of third parties; or
- ▶ in a transaction that, in accordance with article L.411-2-II-1°-or-2°-or 3° of the French Code monétaire et financier and article 211-2 of the General Regulations (Règlement Général) of the Autorité des Marchés Financiers, does not constitute a public offer (appel public à l’épargne).

The units may be resold directly or indirectly, only in compliance with Articles L.411-1, L.411-2, L.412-1 and L.621-8 through L.621-8-3 of the French Code monétaire et financier.

Notice to Prospective Investors in Hong Kong

The units may not be offered or sold in Hong Kong by means of any document other than (i) in circumstances which do not constitute an offer to the public within the meaning of the Companies Ordinance (Cap. 32, Laws of Hong Kong), or (ii) to “professional investors” within the meaning of the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571, Laws of Hong Kong) and any rules made thereunder, or (iii) in other circumstances which do not result in the document being a “prospectus” within the meaning of the Companies Ordinance (Cap. 32, Laws of Hong Kong) and no advertisement, invitation or document relating to the units may be issued or may be in the possession of any person for the purpose of issue (in each case whether in Hong Kong or elsewhere), which is directed at, or the contents of which are likely to be accessed or read by, the public in Hong Kong (except if permitted to do so under the laws of Hong Kong) other than with respect to units which are or are intended to be disposed of only to persons outside Hong Kong or only to “professional investors” within the meaning of the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571, Laws of Hong Kong) and any rules made thereunder.

Notice to Prospective Investors in Japan

The units have not been and will not be registered under the Financial Instruments and Exchange Law of Japan (Law No. 25 of 1948, as amended) and, accordingly, will not be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, in Japan, or for the benefit of any Japanese Person or to others for re-offering or resale, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to any Japanese Person, except in compliance with all applicable laws, regulations and ministerial guidelines promulgated by relevant Japanese governmental or regulatory authorities in effect at the relevant time. For the purposes of this paragraph, “Japanese Person” shall mean any person resident in Japan, including any corporation or other entity organized under the laws of Japan.

Notice to Prospective Investors in Singapore

This prospectus has not been registered as a prospectus with the Monetary Authority of Singapore. Accordingly, this prospectus and any other document or material in connection with the offer or sale, or invitation for subscription or purchase, of the units may not be circulated or distributed, nor may the units be offered or sold, or be made the subject of an invitation for subscription or purchase, whether directly or indirectly, to persons in Singapore other than (i) to an institutional investor under Section 274 of the Securities and Futures Act, Chapter 289 of Singapore (the “SFA”), (ii) to a relevant person pursuant to Section 275(1), or any person pursuant to Section 275(1A), and in accordance with the conditions specified in Section 275 of the SFA or (iii) otherwise pursuant to, and in accordance with the conditions of, any other applicable provision of the SFA, in each case subject to compliance with conditions set forth in the SFA.

Where the units are subscribed or purchased under Section 275 of the SFA by a relevant person which is:

- ▶ shares, debentures and units of shares and debentures of that corporation or the beneficiaries’ rights and interest (howsoever described) in that trust shall not be transferred within six months after that corporation or that trust has acquired the shares pursuant to an offer made under Section 275 of the SFA except:
- ▶ to an institutional investor (for corporations, under Section 274 of the SFA) or to a relevant person defined in Section 275(2) of the SFA, or to any person pursuant to an offer that is made on terms that such shares, debentures and units of shares and debentures of that corporation or such rights and interest in that trust are acquired at a consideration of not less than S\$200,000 (or its equivalent in a foreign currency) for each transaction, whether such amount is to be paid for in cash or by exchange of securities or other assets, and further for corporations, in accordance with the conditions specified in Section 275 of the SFA;
- ▶ where no consideration is or will be given for the transfer; or
- ▶ where the transfer is by operation of law.

LEGAL MATTERS

Graubard Miller, New York, New York, is acting as our counsel in connection with the registration of our securities under the Securities Act, and as such, will pass upon the validity of the securities offered in this offering. Graubard Miller represents EarlyBirdCapital, Inc. in matters unrelated to this offering. Greenberg Traurig, LLP, New York, New York, is acting as counsel to the underwriters.

EXPERTS

The financial statements of Black Ridge Acquisition Corp. at May 31, 2017 and for the period from May 9, 2017 (inception) through May 31, 2017 included in this Prospectus have been audited by Marcum LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, as set forth in their report, thereon (which contains an explanatory paragraph relating to substantial doubt about the ability of Black Ridge Acquisition Corp. to continue as a going concern as described in Note 1 to the financial statements), appearing elsewhere in this prospectus, and are included in reliance on such report given upon such firm as experts in auditing and accounting.

WHERE YOU CAN FIND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form S-1 under the Securities Act with respect to the securities we are offering by this prospectus. This prospectus does not contain all of the information included in the registration statement. For further information about us and our securities, you should refer to the registration statement and the exhibits and schedules filed with the registration statement. Whenever we make reference in this prospectus to any of our contracts, agreements or other documents, the references are materially complete but may not include a description of all aspects of such contracts, agreements or other documents, and you should refer to the exhibits attached to the registration statement for copies of the actual contract, agreement or other document.

Upon completion of this offering, we will be subject to the information requirements of the Exchange Act and will file annual, quarterly and current event reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. You can read our SEC filings, including the registration statement, over the Internet at the SEC's website at www.sec.gov. You may also read and copy any document we file with the SEC at its public reference facility at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549.

You may also obtain copies of the documents at prescribed rates by writing to the Public Reference Section of the SEC at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. Please call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 for further information on the operation of the public reference facilities.

INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	F-2
Financial Statements:	
Balance Sheet	F-3
Statement of Operations	F-4
Statement of Changes in Stockholders' Equity	F-5
Statement of Cash Flows	F-6
Notes to Financial Statements	F-7 – F-16

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the Board of Directors and Shareholder
of Black Ridge Acquisition Corp.

We have audited the accompanying balance sheet of Black Ridge Acquisition Corp. (the "Company") as of May 31, 2017, and the related statements of operations, stockholder's equity and cash flows for the period from May 9, 2017 (inception) through May 31, 2017. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. Our audit included consideration of internal control over financial reporting as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Black Ridge Acquisition Corp., as of May 31, 2017, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the period from May 9, 2017 (inception) through May 31, 2017 in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared assuming the Company will continue as a going concern. As discussed in Note 1 to the financial statements, the Company has no present revenue, its business plan is dependent on the completion of a financing and the Company's cash and working capital as of May 31, 2017 are not sufficient to complete its planned activities for the upcoming year. These conditions raise substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. Management's plans regarding these matters are also described in Notes 1 and 3. These financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

/s/ Marcum LLP

Marcum LLP
New York, NY
June 9, 2017

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.
BALANCE SHEET
May 31, 2017

ASSETS	
Current assets:	
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 87,500
Total current assets	87,500
Deferred offering costs	62,500
Total Assets	\$ 150,000
LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDER'S EQUITY	
Current liabilities:	
Accounts payable - related party	\$ 323
Promissory note - related party	125,000
Total current liabilities	125,323
Total Liabilities	125,323
Commitments and contingencies (See note 5)	-
Stockholder's equity:	
Preferred stock, \$.0001 par value; 1,000,000 shares authorized, none issued and outstanding	-
Common stock, \$.0001 par value; 30,000,000 shares authorized, 2,875,000 shares issued and outstanding ⁽¹⁾	288
Additional paid in capital	24,712
Accumulated deficit	(323)
Total stockholder's equity	24,677
Total Liabilities And Stockholder's Equity	\$ 150,000

(1) This number includes an aggregate of up to 375,000 shares subject to forfeiture if the over-allotment option is not exercised in full or in part by the underwriters

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.
STATEMENT OF OPERATIONS
For the Period from May 9, 2017 (Inception) through May 31, 2017

Formation and operating costs	\$ 323
Net loss	<u>\$ (323)</u>
Weighted average shares outstanding, basic and diluted ⁽¹⁾	<u>2,500,000</u>
Basic and diluted net loss per common share	<u>\$ (0.00)</u>

(1) This number excludes an aggregate of up to 375,000 shares subject to forfeiture if the over-allotment option is not exercised in full or in part by the underwriters.

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements

**BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.
STATEMENT OF STOCKHOLDER'S EQUITY**

	Common Stock ⁽¹⁾		Additional Paid-in Capital	Accumulated Deficit	Total Stockholder's Equity
	Shares	Amount			
Balance, May 9, 2017	-	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Issuance of common stock to Sponsor, net (see note 6)	2,875,000	288	24,712	-	25,000
Net loss	-	-	-	(323)	(323)
Balance, May 31, 2017	<u>2,875,000</u>	<u>\$ 288</u>	<u>\$ 24,712</u>	<u>\$ (323)</u>	<u>\$ 24,677</u>

(1) This number includes an aggregate of up to 375,000 shares subject to forfeiture if the over-allotment option is not exercised by the underwriters

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.
STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS
For the Period from May 9, 2017 (Inception) through May 31, 2017

CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES:	
Net loss	\$ (323)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash provided by operating activities:	
Formation costs paid by related party	323
Net cash provided by operating activities	<u>-</u>
CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES:	
Proceeds from promissory note - related party	62,500
Proceeds from issuance of common stock to Sponsor	25,000
Net cash provided by financing activities	<u>87,500</u>
NET CHANGE IN CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS	87,500
CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS AT BEGINNING OF PERIOD	-
CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS AT END OF PERIOD	<u>\$ 87,500</u>
NON-CASH INVESTING AND FINANCE ACTIVITIES:	
Payment of offering costs through promissory note - related party	<u>\$ 62,500</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
For the Period from May 9, 2017 (Inception) to May 31, 2017

Note 1 – Description of Organization and Business Operations

Black Ridge Acquisition Corp. (“BRAC”, the “Company”, “we”, “us” or “our”) was incorporated in Delaware on May 9, 2017 as a blank check company for the purpose of effecting a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, share purchase, recapitalization, reorganization or other similar business combination with one or more businesses or entities (a “Business Combination”). The Company’s efforts to identify a prospective target business will not be limited to a particular industry or geographic region, although we intend to focus our search for target businesses in the energy or energy-related industries with an emphasis on opportunities in the upstream oil and gas industry in North America.

As of May 31, 2017, the Company had not yet commenced any operations. All activity through May 31, 2017 relates to the Company’s formation and the proposed public offering described below. The Company has selected December 31 as its fiscal year-end. The Company is an early stage and emerging growth company and, as such, the Company is subject to all of the risks associated with early stage and emerging growth companies.

The Company’s ability to commence operations is contingent upon obtaining adequate financial resources through the proposed public offering of 10,000,000 units (or 11,500,000 units if the underwriters’ over-allotment option is exercised in full) at a purchase price of \$10.00 per Unit as discussed in Note 3 (the “Proposed Public Offering”). Each unit consists of consists of one share of common stock, one right and one warrant. Each right will convert to one-tenth (1/10) of one share of common stock upon consummation of a business combination. Each warrant entitles the holder to purchase one share of common stock at a price of \$11.50. Each warrant will become exercisable on the later of 30 days after the completion of an initial business combination or 12 months from the closing of this offering and will expire on the fifth anniversary of our completion of an initial business combination, or earlier upon redemption or liquidation. The company has granted the underwriters a 45-day option to purchase up to an additional 1,500,000 units to cover over-allotments, if any.

Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc. (“BROG” and “the Sponsor”) has committed to purchase from us an aggregate of 350,000 units, or “private units,” at \$10.00 per unit (for a total purchase price of \$3,500,000) in a private placement that will occur simultaneously with the consummation of this offering. The Sponsor has also agreed that if the over-allotment option is exercised by the underwriters in full or in part, it will purchase from us additional private units (up to a maximum of 37,500 private units) at a price of \$10.00 per private unit in an amount that is necessary to maintain in the trust account \$10.05 per unit sold to the public in this offering. These additional private units will be purchased in a private placement that will occur simultaneously with the purchase of units resulting from the exercise of the over-allotment option. The private units are identical to the units sold in this offering, subject to certain limited exceptions.

The Company’s management has broad discretion with respect to the specific application of the net proceeds of the Proposed Public Offering and private units, although substantially all of the net proceeds are intended to be applied generally toward consummating a Business Combination. There is no assurance that the Company will be able to complete a Business Combination successfully. Upon the closing of the Proposed Public Offering, management has agreed that at least \$10.05 per Unit sold in the Proposed Public Offering, including the proceeds of the Private Placements will be held in a trust account (“Trust Account”) until the earlier of (i) the consummation of its initial Business Combination or (ii) the Company’s failure to consummate a Business Combination within 21 months from the consummation of the Proposed Public Offering. Placing funds in the Trust Account may not protect those funds from third party claims against the Company. Although the Company will seek to have all vendors, service providers, prospective target businesses or other entities it engages, execute agreements with the Company waiving any claim of any kind in or to any monies held in the Trust Account, there is no guarantee that such persons will execute such agreements. The remaining net proceeds (not held in the Trust Account) may be used to pay for business, legal and accounting due diligence on prospective acquisitions and continuing general and administrative expenses. Additionally, the interest earned on the Trust Account balance may be released to the Company for any amounts that are necessary to pay the Company’s income and other tax obligations.

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
For the Period from May 9, 2017 (Inception) to May 31, 2017

Note 1 – Description of Organization and Business Operations (Continued)

The amount of proceeds not held in Trust is expected to be approximately \$500,000, after the payment of approximately \$2.5 million in expenses related to the Proposed Public Offering, inclusive of \$2.0 million of underwriting fees. In order to meet its working capital needs following the consummation of the Proposed Public Offering, the Company's Sponsor or their affiliates may, but are not obligated to, loan the Company funds as may be required. The loans would either be paid upon consummation of the Company's initial Business Combination, or, at the lender's discretion, up to \$1,500,000 of such loans may be converted upon consummation of the Company's Business Combination into units at a price of \$10.00 per unit. These units would be identical to the private units. If the Company does not complete a Business Combination, the loans would be repaid only out of funds held outside of the Trust Account.

Subject to certain exceptions, the sponsor has agreed that it will be liable to ensure that the proceeds in the trust account are not reduced below \$10.05 per share by the claims of target businesses or claims of vendors or other entities that are owed money by the Company for services rendered or contracted for or products sold to us.

Initial Business Combination

Pursuant to the Nasdaq Capital Markets listing rules, the Company's initial Business Combination must be with a target business or businesses whose collective fair market value is at least equal to 80% of the balance in the Trust Account, net of taxes payable, at the time of the execution of a definitive agreement for such Business Combination, although this may entail simultaneous acquisitions of several target businesses. The fair market value of the target will be determined by the Company's board of directors based upon one or more standards generally accepted by the financial community (such as actual and potential sales, earnings, cash flow and/or book value). The target business or businesses that the Company acquires may have a collective fair market value substantially in excess of 80% of the Trust Account balance. In order to consummate such a Business Combination, the Company may issue a significant amount of its debt or equity securities to the sellers of such business and/or seek to raise additional funds through a private offering of debt or equity securities. If the Company's securities are not listed on NASDAQ after the Proposed Public Offering, the Company would not be required to satisfy the 80% requirement. However, the Company intends to satisfy the 80% requirement even if the Company's securities are not listed on NASDAQ at the time of the initial Business Combination.

The Company will provide the public stockholders, who are the holders of the Common stock ("Public Shares") which will be sold as part of the Units in the Proposed Public Offering, whether they are purchased in the Proposed Public Offering or in the aftermarket and the Company's shareholders prior to the Proposed Public Offering (included the Sponsor) (the "Initial Stockholders") to the extent that they purchase such Public Shares ("Public Stockholders"), with an opportunity to redeem all or a portion of their Public Shares of the Company's Common stock, irrespective of whether they vote for or against the proposed transaction or if the Company conducts a tender offer, upon the completion of the initial Business Combination either (1) in connection with a stockholder meeting called to approve the Business Combination, or (ii) by means of a tender offer, at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account including interest (net of taxes payable, divided by the number of then outstanding shares of Common stock. The amount in the Trust Account is initially anticipated to be \$10.05 per Public Share. The common stock subject to redemption will be recorded at a redemption value and classified a temporary equity upon the completion of the Proposed Public Offering, in accordance with Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") Topic 480 "Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity". In such case, the Company will proceed with a Business Combination only if the Company has net tangible assets of at least \$5,000,001 upon such consummation of a Business Combination and in the case of a stockholder vote, a majority of the outstanding shares voted are voted in favor of the Business Combination. The decision as to whether the Company will seek stockholder approval of a proposed Business Combination or conduct a tender offer will be made by the Company, solely in its discretion, based on a variety of factors such as the timing of the transaction and whether the terms of the transaction would otherwise require it to seek stockholder approval under the law or stock exchange listing requirement. If a stockholder vote is not required and the Company decides not to hold a stockholder vote for business or other legal reasons, the Company will, pursuant to the proposed amended and restated certificate of incorporation, (i) conduct the redemptions pursuant to Rule 13e-4 and Regulation 14E of the Exchange Act, which regulate issuer tender offers, and (ii) file tender offer documents with the SEC prior to completing the initial Business Combination which contain substantially the same financial and other information about the initial Business Combination and the redemption rights as is required under Regulation 14A of the Exchange Act, which regulates the solicitation of proxies.

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
For the Period from May 9, 2017 (Inception) to May 31, 2017

Note 1 – Description of Organization and Business Operations (Continued)

The Initial Stockholders will agree to vote their Founder Shares (as described in Note 6) and any Public Shares purchased during or after the Proposed Public Offering in favor of the initial Business Combination, and the Company's executive officers, directors and director nominees have also agreed to vote any Public Shares purchased during or after the Proposed Public Offering in favor of the initial Business Combination. The Initial Stockholders will enter into a letter agreement, pursuant to which they agree to waive their redemption rights with respect to the Founder Share, the shares underlying the Private Units and Public Shares in connection with the completion of the initial Business Combination. In addition, the Initial Stockholders will also agree to waive their rights to liquidating distributions from the Trust Account with respect to the Founder Shares and the shares underlying the Private Units if the Company fails to complete the initial Business Combination within the prescribed time frame. However, if the Initial Stockholders (or any of the Company's executive officers, directors or affiliates) acquire Public Shares in or after the Proposed Public Offering, they will be entitled to liquidating distributions from the Trust Account with respect to such Public Shares in the event the Company does not complete the initial Business Combination within such applicable time period.

Failure to Consummate a Business Combination

If the Company is unable to complete the initial Business Combination within 21 months from the consummation of the Proposed Public Offering, the Company must: (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but not more than ten business days thereafter, redeem the public shares, at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, including interest (which interest shall be net of taxes payable and up to \$50,000 that may be used to pay for liquidation expenses), divided by the number of then outstanding public shares, which redemption will completely extinguish public stockholders' rights as stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidation distributions, if any), subject to applicable law, and (iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of the Company's remaining stockholders and the Company's Board of Directors, dissolve and liquidate, subject in the case of clauses (ii) and (iii) to the Company's obligations under Delaware law to provide for claims of creditors and the requirements of other applicable law.

Going Concern Consideration

At May 31, 2017, the Company had cash and cash equivalents of \$87,500 and a working capital deficit of \$37,823. Further, the Company has incurred, and expects to continue to incur, significant costs in pursuit of its financing and acquisition plans. These conditions raise substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern for at least one year from the issuance of these financial statements. Management plans to address this uncertainty through the Proposed Public Offering as discussed in Note 3. There is no assurance that the Company's plans to raise capital or to consummate a Business Combination will be successful or successful within the required time period. The financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

Note 2 – Significant Accounting Policies

Basis of Presentation

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("U.S. GAAP") and pursuant to the accounting and disclosure rules and regulations of the SEC.

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
For the Period from May 9, 2017 (Inception) to May 31, 2017

Note 2 – Significant Accounting Policies (Continued)

Emerging growth company

The Company is an “emerging growth company,” as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, (the “Securities Act”), as modified by the Jumpstart our Business Startups Act of 2012, (the “JOBS Act”), and it may take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies including, but not limited to, not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in its periodic reports and proxy statements, and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and shareholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved.

Further, section 102(b)(1) of the JOBS Act exempts emerging growth companies from being required to comply with new or revised financial accounting standards until private companies (that is, those that have not had a Securities Act registration statement declared effective or do not have a class of securities registered under the Exchange Act) are required to comply with the new or revised financial accounting standards. The JOBS Act provides that a company can elect to opt out of the extended transition period and comply with the requirements that apply to non-emerging growth companies but any such election to opt out is irrevocable. The Company has elected not to opt out of such extended transition period which means that when a standard is issued or revised and it has different application dates for public or private companies, the Company, as an emerging growth company, can adopt the new or revised standard at the time private companies adopt the new or revised standard. This may make comparison of the Company’s financial statements with another public company which is neither an emerging growth company nor an emerging growth company which has opted out of using the extended transition period difficult or impossible because of the potential differences in accountant standards used.

Cash and cash equivalents

The Company considers all short-term investments with an original maturity of three months or less when purchased to be cash equivalents. The Company did not have any cash equivalents as of May 31, 2017.

Concentration of credit risk

Financial instruments that potentially subject the Company to concentration of credit risk consist of a cash account in a financial institution which, at times may exceed the Federal depository insurance coverage of \$250,000. At May 31, 2017, the Company had not experienced losses on this account and management believes the Company is not exposed to significant risks on such account.

Loss per share

Loss per share is computed by dividing net loss by the weighted-average number of shares of common stock outstanding during the period excluding shares subject to forfeiture. Weighted average shares was reduced for the effect of an aggregate of 375,000 shares of common stock that are subject to forfeiture if the over-allotment option is not exercised by the underwriters. At May 31, 2017, the Company did not have any dilutive securities and other contracts that could, potentially, be exercised or converted into common stock and then share in the earnings of the Company. As a result, diluted loss per share is the same as basic loss per share.

Use of estimates

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of expenses during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
For the Period from May 9, 2017 (Inception) to May 31, 2017

Note 2 – Significant Accounting Policies (Continued)

Fair value of financial instruments

The fair value of the Company's assets and liabilities, which qualify as financial instruments under ASC Topic 820, "Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures", approximates the carrying amounts represented in the accompanying balance sheet, primarily due to their short-term nature.

Deferred offering costs

Deferred offering costs consist principally of legal, underwriting fees and other costs incurred through the balance sheet date that are directly related to the Proposed Public Offering and that will be charged to stockholder's equity upon the receipt of the capital raised. Should the Proposed Public Offering prove to be unsuccessful, these deferred costs as well as additional expenses to be incurred will be charged to operations.

Income taxes

The Company accounts for income taxes under ASC Topic 740 "Income Taxes" ("ASC 740"). ASC 740 requires the recognition of deferred tax assets and liabilities for both the expected impact of differences between the financial statement and tax basis of assets and liabilities and for the expected future tax benefit to be derived from tax loss and tax credit carry forwards. ASC 740 additionally requires a valuation allowance to be established when it is more likely than not that all or a portion of deferred tax assets will not be realized.

ASC 740 also clarifies the accounting for uncertainty in income taxes recognized in an enterprise's financial statements and prescribes a recognition threshold and measurement process for financial statement recognition and measurement of a tax position taken or expected to be taken in a tax return. For those benefits to be recognized, a tax position must be more-likely-than-not to be sustained upon examination by taxing authorities. ASC 740 also provides guidance on derecognition, classification, interest and penalties, accounting in interim periods, disclosure and transition. Based on the Company's evaluation, it has been concluded that there are no significant uncertain tax positions requiring recognition in the Company's financial statements. Since the Company was incorporated on May 9, 2017, the evaluation was performed for the upcoming 2017 tax year, which will be the only period subject to examination upon filing of appropriate tax returns. The Company believes that its income tax positions and deductions would be sustained on audit and does not anticipate any adjustments that would result in a material changes to its financial position.

The Company's policy for recording interest and penalties associated with audits is to record such expense as a component of income tax expense. There were no amounts accrued for penalties or interest as of or during the period from May 9, 2017 (inception) through May 31, 2017. Management is currently unaware of any issues under review that could result in significant payments, accruals or material deviations from its position.

The provision for income taxes was deemed to be immaterial for the period ended May 31, 2017.

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
For the Period from May 9, 2017 (Inception) to May 31, 2017

Note 2 – Significant Accounting Policies (Continued)

Recent Accounting Pronouncements

The Company has evaluated recently issued, but not yet effective, accounting pronouncements and does not believe they would have a material effect on the Company's financial statements.

Note 3 — Proposed Public Offering and Private Placement

Proposed Public Offering

The Proposed Public Offering calls for the Company to offer for public sale 10,000,000 Units at a proposed offering price of \$10.00 per Unit (plus up to an additional 1,500,000 Units solely to cover over-allotments, if any). Each Unit consists of one share of the Company's Common stock, one right and one warrant. Each right will convert into one-tenth (1/10) of one share of common stock upon consummation of a Business Combination. Each warrant to purchase one share of Common stock at a price of \$11.50 per share, subject to adjustment ("Warrants"). The Warrants will become exercisable on the later of (i) 30 days after the completion of the initial Business Combination and (ii) 12 months from the closing of the Proposed Public Offering, and will expire five years after the completion of the initial Business Combination or earlier upon redemption or liquidation.

The Company may redeem the Warrants, in whole and not in part, at a price of \$0.01 per Warrant upon 30 days' notice ("30-day redemption period"), only in the event that the last sale price of the Common stock equals or exceeds \$18.00 per share for any 20 trading days within a 30-trading day period ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which notice of redemption is given, provided there is an effective registration statement with respect to the shares of common stock underlying such Warrants and a current prospectus relating to those shares of common stock is available throughout the 30-day redemption period. If the Company calls the Warrants for redemption as described above, the Company's management will have the option to require all holders that wish to exercise Warrants to do so on a "cashless basis." In determining whether to require all holders to exercise their warrants on a "cashless basis," the management will consider, among other factors, the Company's cash position, the number of Warrants that are outstanding and the dilutive effect on the Company's stockholders of issuing the maximum number of shares of Common stock issuable upon the exercise of the Warrants.

There will be no redemption rights or liquidating distributions with respect to the Warrants, which will expire worthless if we fail to complete our business combination within the 21-month time period.

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
For the Period from May 9, 2017 (Inception) to May 31, 2017

Note 3 — Proposed Public Offering and Private Placement (Continued)

Private Placement

The Sponsor has committed to purchase from us an aggregate of 350,000 units, or “private units,” at \$10.00 per unit (for a total purchase price of \$3,500,000) in a private placement that will occur simultaneously with the consummation of this offering. The Sponsor has also agreed that if the over-allotment option is exercised by the underwriters in full or in part, it will purchase from us additional private units (up to a maximum of 37,500 private units) at a price of \$10.00 per private unit in an amount that is necessary to maintain in the trust account \$10.05 per unit sold to the public in this offering. These additional private units will be purchased in a private placement that will occur simultaneously with the purchase of units resulting from the exercise of the over-allotment option. The private units are identical to the units sold in this offering, subject to certain limited exceptions.

Note 4 — Related Party Transactions

Founders Shares

In connection with the organization of the Company, a total of 2,875,000 shares of common stock were sold to the Sponsor at a price of approximately \$0.01 per share for an aggregate of \$25,000 (“Founder Shares”). The 2,875,000 Founder Shares include an aggregate of up to 375,000 shares of common stock subject to forfeiture to the extent that the over-allotment option is not exercised by the underwriters in full or in part. The Sponsor will be required to forfeit only a number of shares of common stock necessary to continue to maintain the 20.0% ownership interest in our shares of common stock after giving effect to the offering and exercise, if any, of the underwriters’ over-allotment option.

Related Party Loans

As of May 31, 2017, the Sponsor has loaned an aggregate of \$125,000 to cover expenses related to the Company’s formation and the Proposed Public Offering. This note is payable without interest and shall be payable on the earlier of (i) June 1, 2018, (ii) consummation of the initial Business Combination, or (iii) the date on which it is determined not to proceed with the Proposed Public Offering. The Company intends to repay the note from the proceeds of the Proposed Public Offering not placed in the Trust Account.

We do not believe we will need to raise additional funds following this offering in order to meet the expenditures required for operating our business. However, in order to finance transaction costs in connection with an intended initial business combination, our sponsor, officers, directors or their affiliates may, but are not obligated to, loan us funds as may be required. If we consummate an initial business combination, we would repay such loaned amounts. In the event that the initial business combination does not close, we may use a portion of the working capital held outside the trust account to repay such loaned amounts, but no proceeds from our trust account would be used for such repayment. Up to \$1,500,000 of such loans may be convertible into units of the post business combination entity at a price of \$10.00 per unit at the option of the lender. The units would be identical to the private units.

Administrative Service Agreement

Commencing on the effective date of the prospectus for Proposed Public Offering through the earlier of our consummation of our initial Business Combination or our liquidation, the Sponsor will make available to us certain general and administrative services, including office space, utilities and administrative support, as we may require from time to time. The Company has agreed to pay the Sponsor \$10,000 per month for these services. We believe, based on rents and fees for similar services in the Minneapolis, Minnesota metropolitan area, that the fee charged by the Sponsor is at least as favorable as we could have obtained from an unaffiliated person.

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
For the Period from May 9, 2017 (Inception) to May 31, 2017

Note 4 — Related Party Transactions (Continued)

As discussed in Note 1, the Sponsor has committed that it will purchase an aggregate of 350,000 private units at \$10.00 per private unit (for a total purchase price of \$3,500,000) from us simultaneous with the Proposed Public Offering. The Sponsor has also agreed that if the over-allotment option is exercised by the underwriters in full or in part, it will purchase from us an additional number of private units (up to a maximum of 37,500 private units) at a price of \$10.00 per private unit necessary to maintain in the Trust Account \$10.05 per unit sold to the public in the Proposed Public Offering.

Note 5 — Commitments and Contingencies

Agreements with underwriters

The Company will grant the underwriters a 45-day option to purchase up to 1,500,000 additional Units to cover the over-allotment at the Proposed Public Offering price less the underwriting discounts and commissions. In addition, the underwriters will be entitled to an underwriting discount of 2.0%, payable in cash at the closing of the Proposed Public Offering. No discounts or commissions will be paid on the sale of the Private Placement Units.

Business Contribution Marketing Agreement

The Company engaged the underwriters as advisors in connection with our business combination to assist us in holding meetings with our shareholders to discuss the potential business combination and the target business' attributes, introduce us to potential investors that are interested in purchasing our securities, assist us in obtaining shareholder approval for the business combination and assist us with our press releases and public filings in connection with the business combination. The Company will pay the underwriters a cash fee for such services upon the consummation of our initial business combination in an amount equal to 3.5% of the gross proceeds of this offering (exclusive of any applicable finders' fees which might become payable).

Registration Rights

The holders of our founders' shares issued and outstanding on the date of the prospectus for the Proposed Public Offering, as well as the holders of the private units and any units our Sponsor, officers, directors or their affiliates may be issued in payment of working capital loans made to us (and all underlying securities), will be entitled to registration rights pursuant to an agreement to be signed prior to or on the effective date of this offering. The holders of a majority of these securities are entitled to make up to two demands that we register such securities. The holders of the majority of the founders' shares can elect to exercise these registration rights at any time commencing three months prior to the date on which these shares of common stock are to be released from escrow. The holders of a majority of the private units and units issued to our sponsor, officers, directors or their affiliates in payment of working capital loans made to us (or underlying securities) can elect to exercise these registration rights at any time after we consummate a Business Combination. In addition, the holders have certain "piggy-back" registration rights with respect to registration statements filed subsequent to our consummation of a Business Combination. We will bear the expenses incurred in connection with the filing of any such registration statements.

Other General and Administrative Services

Commencing on the effective date of the prospectus for the Proposed Public Offering through the earlier of our consummation of our initial Business Combination or our liquidation, the Sponsor will make available to us certain general and administrative services, including office space, utilities and administrative support, as we may require from time to time. The Company has agreed to pay the Sponsor \$10,000 per month for these services (see Note 4).

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
For the Period from May 9, 2017 (Inception) to May 31, 2017

Note 5 — Commitments and Contingencies (Continued)

Unit Purchase Option

The Company has agreed to sell the underwriter (and/or its designees), for \$100, an option to purchase up to 500,000 Units exercisable at \$11.50 per Unit (or an aggregate exercise price of \$5,750,000) upon the closing of a proposed public offering. The unit purchase option may be exercised for cash or on a cashless basis, at the holder's option, at any time during the period commencing on the later of the first anniversary of the effective date of the registration statement for the proposed offering and the closing of an initial business combination and terminating on the fifth anniversary of the effective date for the proposed offering. The Units issuable upon exercise of this option are identical to those offered in the proposed offering. The Company intends to account for the unit purchase option, inclusive of the receipt of \$100 cash payment, as an expense of the proposed offering resulting in a charge directly to stockholders' equity. The Company estimates that the fair value of this unit purchase option is approximately \$1,428,154 (or \$2.86 per Unit) using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model. The fair value of the unit purchase option to be granted to the underwriters is estimated as of the date of grant using the following assumptions: (1) expected volatility of 35%, (2) risk-free interest rate of 1.71% and (3) expected life of five years. The option and such units purchased pursuant to the option, as well as the ordinary shares underlying such units, the rights included in such units, the ordinary shares that are issuable for the rights included in such units, the warrants included in such units, and the shares underlying such warrants, have been deemed compensation by FINRA and are therefore subject to a 180-day lock-up pursuant to Rule 5110(g)(1) of FINRA's NASDAQ Conduct Rules. Additionally, the option may not be sold, transferred, assigned, pledged or hypothecated for a one-year period (including the foregoing 180-day period) following the date of Proposed Offering except to any underwriter and selected dealer participating in the Proposed Offering and their bona fide officers or partners. The option grants to holders demand and "piggy back" rights for periods of five and seven years, respectively, from the effective date of the registration statement with respect to the registration under the Securities Act of the securities directly and indirectly issuable upon exercise of the option. The Company will bear all fees and expenses attendant to registering the securities, other than underwriting commissions which will be paid for by the holders themselves. The exercise price and number of units issuable upon exercise of the option may be adjusted in certain circumstances including in the event of a stock dividend, or the Company's recapitalization, reorganization, merger or consolidation. However, the option will not be adjusted for issuances of ordinary shares at a price below its exercise price. The Company will have no obligation to cash settle the exercise of the purchase option or the rights and warrants underlying the purchase option. The holder of the purchase option will not be entitled to exercise the purchase option or the rights or warrants underlying the purchase option unless a registration statement covering the securities underlying the purchase option is effective or an exemption from registration is available. If the holder is unable to exercise the purchase option or underlying rights and warrants, the purchase option, rights or warrants, as applicable, will expire worthless.

Note 6 — Stockholders' Equity

Preferred Stock

The Company is authorized to issue 1,000,000 shares of preferred stock with a par value of \$0.0001 per share with such designation, rights and preferences as may be determined from time to time by the Company's board of directors. As of May 31, 2017, no preferred stock is issued or outstanding.

Common Stock

The Company is authorized to issue 30,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share

A total of 2,875,000 Founder Shares of common stock were sold to the Sponsor at a price of approximately \$0.01 per share for an aggregate of \$25,000. The Founders Shares include an aggregate of up to 375,000 shares of common stock subject to forfeiture to the extent that the over-allotment option is not exercised by the underwriters in full or in part. The Sponsor will be required to forfeit only a number of shares of common stock necessary to continue to maintain the 20.0% ownership interest in our shares of common stock after giving effect to the offering and exercise, if any, of the underwriters' over-allotment option.

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
For the Period from May 9, 2017 (Inception) to May 31, 2017

Note 6 — Stockholders' Equity (Continued)

Subject to certain limited exceptions, 50% of the Founder Shares will not be transferred, assigned, sold until the earlier of: (i) one year after the date of the consummation of the initial Business Combination or (ii) the date on which the closing price of the Company's common stock equals or exceeds \$12.50 per share (as adjusted) for any 20 trading days within any 30-trading day period commencing 150 days after the initial Business Combination, and the remaining 50% of the Founder Shares will not be transferred, assigned, sold until one year after the date of the consummation of the initial Business Combination, or earlier, in either case, if, subsequent to the Company's initial Business Combination, the Company consummates a subsequent liquidation, merger, stock exchange, reorganization or other similar transaction which results in all of shareholders having the right to exchange their common stock for cash, securities or other property.

Rights

Each holder of a right will receive one-tenth (1/10) of one share of common stock upon consummation of a Business Combination, even if a holder of such right converted all ordinary shares held by it in connection with a Business Combination. No fractional shares will be issued upon exchange of the rights. No additional consideration will be required to be paid by a holder of rights in order to receive its additional shares upon consummation of a Business Combination as the consideration related thereto has been included in the Unit purchase price paid for by investors in the Proposed Public Offering. If the Company enters into a definitive agreement for a Business Combination in which the Company will not be the surviving entity, the definitive agreement will provide for the holders of rights to receive the same per share consideration the holders of the shares of common stock will receive in the transaction on an as-converted into shares of common stock basis and each holder of rights will be required to affirmatively convert its rights in order to receive 1/10 of a share of common stock underlying each right (without paying additional consideration). The shares of common stock issuable upon exchange of the rights will be freely tradable (except to the extent held by affiliates of the Company).

If the Company is unable to complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period and the Company liquidates the funds held in the Trust Account, holders of rights will not receive any of such funds with respect to their rights, nor will they receive any distribution from the Company's assets held outside of the Trust Account with respect to such rights, and the rights will expire worthless. Further, there are no contractual penalties for failure to deliver securities to the holders of the rights upon consummation of a Business Combination. Additionally, in no event will the Company be required to net cash settle the rights. Accordingly, the rights may expire worthless.

The rights included in the Private Units being sold in the Private Placement will be identical to the rights included in the Units being sold in the Proposed Public Offering, except that, among others, the rights including the shares issuable upon exchange of such rights, are being purchased pursuant to an exemption from the registration requirements of the Securities Act and will become tradable only after certain conditions are met or the resale of such rights (including underlying securities) is registered under the Securities Act.

Warrants

Warrants may only be exercised for a whole number of shares. No fractional shares will be issued upon exercise of the Warrants. The Warrants will become exercisable on the later of (a) 30 days after the consummation of a Business Combination or (b) 12 months from the effective date of the registration statement relating to the Proposed Public Offering. No Warrants will be exercisable for cash unless the Company has an effective and current registration statement covering the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants and a current prospectus relating to such shares. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if a registration statement covering the shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of the Warrants is not effective within a to-be-determined number of days from the consummation of a Business Combination, the holders may, until such time as there is an effective registration statement and during any period when the Company shall have failed to maintain an effective registration statement, exercise the Warrants on a cashless basis pursuant to an available exemption from registration under the Securities Act. If an exemption from registration is not available, holders will not be able to exercise their Warrants on a cashless basis. The Warrants will expire five years from the consummation of a Business Combination or earlier upon redemption or liquidation.

The Warrants underlying the private units ("Private Warrants") will be identical to the Warrants underlying the Units being sold in the Proposed Public Offering, except the Private Warrants will be exercisable for cash (even if a registration statement covering the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of such Private Warrants is not effective) or on a cashless basis, at the holder's option, and will not be redeemable by the Company, in each case so long as they are still held by the Initial Stockholders or their affiliates.

The Company may call the Warrants for redemption (excluding the Private Warrants but including any outstanding Warrants issued upon exercise of the unit purchase option issued to EarlyBirdCapital), in whole and not in part, at a price of \$.01 per Warrant:

- at any time while the Warrants are exercisable,
- upon not less than 30 days' prior written notice of redemption to each Warrant holder,
- if, and only if, the reported last sale price of the shares of common stock equals or exceeds \$18.00 per share, for any 20 trading days within a 30 trading day period ending on the third business day prior to the notice of redemption to Warrant holders, and
- if, and only if, there is a current registration statement in effect with respect to the shares of common stock underlying such Warrants at the time of redemption and for the entire 30-day redemption period and continuing each day thereafter until the date of

redemption.

If the Company calls the Warrants for redemption, management will have the option to require all holders that wish to exercise the Warrants to do so on a “cashless basis,” as described in the warrant agreement.

The exercise price and number of shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants may be adjusted in certain circumstances including in the event of a stock dividend, extraordinary dividend or recapitalization, reorganization, merger or consolidation. However, the Warrants will not be adjusted for issuances of shares of common stock at a price below its exercise price. Additionally, in no event will the Company be required to net cash settle the Warrants. If the Company is unable to complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period and the Company liquidates the funds held in the Trust Account, holders of Warrants will not receive any of such funds with respect to their Warrants, nor will they receive any distribution from the Company’s assets held outside of the Trust Account with respect to such Warrants. Accordingly, the Warrants may expire worthless.

Note 7 — Subsequent Events

The Company evaluated subsequent events and transactions that occurred after the balance sheet date up to June 8, 2017, the date the financial statements were available to be issued. The Company did not identify any subsequent events that would have required adjustment or disclosure in the financial statements.

10,000,000 Units

Black Ridge Acquisition Corp.

PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUS

, 2017

Sole Book-Running Manager

EarlyBirdCapital, Inc.

Chardan

I-Bankers Securities Inc.

Until _____, 2017 (25 days after the date of this prospectus), all dealers that buy, sell or trade our common stock, whether or not participating in this offering, may be required to deliver a prospectus. This is in addition to the dealers' obligation to deliver a prospectus when acting as underwriters and with respect to their unsold allotments or subscriptions.

PART II

INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS

Item 13. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution.

The estimated expenses payable by us in connection with the offering described in this registration statement (other than the underwriting discount and commissions) will be as follows:

Initial Trustees' fee	\$	1,000 ⁽¹⁾
SEC Registration Fee		14,000
FINRA filing fee		18,625
Accounting fees and expenses		40,000
Nasdaq listing fees		75,000
Printing and engraving expenses		40,000
Directors & Officers liability insurance premiums		90,000 ⁽²⁾
Legal fees and expenses		250,000
Miscellaneous		61,375 ⁽³⁾
		<u>61,375</u>
Total	\$	590,000

- (1) In addition to the initial acceptance fee that is charged by Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, as trustee, the registrant will be required to pay to Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company \$16,100 for acting as trustee, as transfer agent of the registrant's common stock, as warrant agent for the registrant's warrants and as escrow agent.
- (2) This amount represents the approximate amount of director and officer liability insurance premiums the registrant anticipates paying following the consummation of its initial public offering and until it consummates a business combination.
- (3) This amount represents additional expenses that may be incurred by the Company in connection with the offering over and above those specifically listed above, including distribution and mailing costs.

Item 14. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.

Our certificate of incorporation provides that all directors, officers, employees and agents of the registrant shall be entitled to be indemnified by us to the fullest extent permitted by Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law.

Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law concerning indemnification of officers, directors, employees and agents is set forth below.

"Section 145. Indemnification of officers, directors, employees and agents; insurance.

- (a) A corporation shall have power to indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative (other than an action by or in the right of the corporation) by reason of the fact that the person is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise, against expenses (including attorneys' fees), judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred by the person in connection with such action, suit or proceeding if the person acted in good faith and in a manner the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe the person's conduct was unlawful. The termination of any action, suit or proceeding by judgment, order, settlement, conviction, or upon a plea of nolo contendere or its equivalent, shall not, of itself, create a presumption that the person did not act in good faith and in a manner which the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had reasonable cause to believe that the person's conduct was unlawful.

- (b) A corporation shall have power to indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action or suit by or in the right of the corporation to procure a judgment in its favor by reason of the fact that the person is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise against expenses (including attorneys' fees) actually and reasonably incurred by the person in connection with the defense or settlement of such action or suit if the person acted in good faith and in a manner the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation and except that no indemnification shall be made in respect of any claim, issue or matter as to which such person shall have been adjudged to be liable to the corporation unless and only to the extent that the Court of Chancery or the court in which such action or suit was brought shall determine upon application that, despite the adjudication of liability but in view of all the circumstances of the case, such person is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such expenses which the Court of Chancery or such other court shall deem proper.
- (c) To the extent that a present or former director or officer of a corporation has been successful on the merits or otherwise in defense of any action, suit or proceeding referred to in subsections (a) and (b) of this section, or in defense of any claim, issue or matter therein, such person shall be indemnified against expenses (including attorneys' fees) actually and reasonably incurred by such person in connection therewith.
- (d) Any indemnification under subsections (a) and (b) of this section (unless ordered by a court) shall be made by the corporation only as authorized in the specific case upon a determination that indemnification of the present or former director, officer, employee or agent is proper in the circumstances because the person has met the applicable standard of conduct set forth in subsections (a) and (b) of this section. Such determination shall be made, with respect to a person who is a director or officer at the time of such determination, (1) by a majority vote of the directors who are not parties to such action, suit or proceeding, even though less than a quorum, or (2) by a committee of such directors designated by majority vote of such directors, even though less than a quorum, or (3) if there are no such directors, or if such directors so direct, by independent legal counsel in a written opinion, or (4) by the stockholders.
- (e) Expenses (including attorneys' fees) incurred by an officer or director in defending any civil, criminal, administrative or investigative action, suit or proceeding may be paid by the corporation in advance of the final disposition of such action, suit or proceeding upon receipt of an undertaking by or on behalf of such director or officer to repay such amount if it shall ultimately be determined that such person is not entitled to be indemnified by the corporation as authorized in this section. Such expenses (including attorneys' fees) incurred by former directors and officers or other employees and agents may be so paid upon such terms and conditions, if any, as the corporation deems appropriate.
- (f) The indemnification and advancement of expenses provided by, or granted pursuant to, the other subsections of this section shall not be deemed exclusive of any other rights to which those seeking indemnification or advancement of expenses may be entitled under any bylaw, agreement, vote of stockholders or disinterested directors or otherwise, both as to action in such person's official capacity and as to action in another capacity while holding such office.
- (g) A corporation shall have power to purchase and maintain insurance on behalf of any person who is or was director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise against any liability asserted against such person and incurred by such person in any such capacity, or arising out of such person's status as such, whether or not the corporation would have the power to indemnify such person against such liability under this section.

- (h) For purposes of this section, references to “the corporation” shall include, in addition to the resulting corporation, any constituent corporation (including any constituent of a constituent) absorbed in a consolidation or merger which, if its separate existence had continued, would have had power and authority to indemnify its directors, officers, and employees or agents, so that any person who is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of such constituent corporation, or is or was serving at the request of such constituent corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise, shall stand in the same position under this section with respect to the resulting or surviving corporation as such person would have with respect to such constituent corporation if its separate existence had continued.
- (i) For purposes of this section, references to “other enterprises” shall include employee benefit plans; references to “fines” shall include any excise taxes assessed on a person with respect to any employee benefit plan; and references to “serving at the request of the corporation” shall include any service as a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation which imposes duties on, or involves services by, such director, officer, employee or agent with respect to an employee benefit plan, its participants or beneficiaries; and a person who acted in good faith and in a manner such person reasonably believed to be in the interest of the participants and beneficiaries of an employee benefit plan shall be deemed to have acted in a manner “not opposed to the best interests of the corporation” as referred to in this section.
- (j) The indemnification and advancement of expenses provided by, or granted pursuant to, this section shall, unless otherwise provided when authorized or ratified, continue as to a person who has ceased to be a director, officer, employee or agent and shall inure to the benefit of the heirs, executors and administrators of such a person.
- (k) The Court of Chancery is hereby vested with exclusive jurisdiction to hear and determine all actions for advancement of expenses or indemnification brought under this section or under any bylaw, agreement, vote of stockholders or disinterested directors, or otherwise. The Court of Chancery may summarily determine a corporation’s obligation to advance expenses (including attorneys’ fees).”

Inssofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to our directors, officers, and controlling persons pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, we have been advised that, in the opinion of the SEC, such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person in a successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, we will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to the court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

Paragraph B of Article Eighth of our certificate of incorporation provides:

“The Corporation, to the full extent permitted by Section 145 of the GCL, as amended from time to time, shall indemnify all persons whom it may indemnify pursuant thereto. Expenses (including attorneys’ fees) incurred by an officer or director in defending any civil, criminal, administrative, or investigative action, suit or proceeding for which such officer or director may be entitled to indemnification hereunder shall be paid by the Corporation in advance of the final disposition of such action, suit or proceeding upon receipt of an undertaking by or on behalf of such director or officer to repay such amount if it shall ultimately be determined that he is not entitled to be indemnified by the Corporation as authorized hereby.”

Pursuant to the Underwriting Agreement filed as Exhibit 1.1 to this Registration Statement, we have agreed to indemnify the Underwriters and the Underwriters have agreed to indemnify us against certain civil liabilities that may be incurred in connection with this offering, including certain liabilities under the Securities Act.

Item 15. Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities.

(a) During the past three years, we sold the following shares of common stock without registration under the Securities Act:

Stockholder	Number of Shares
Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc.	2,875,000

Such shares were issued on May 9, 2017 in connection with our organization pursuant to the exemption from registration contained in Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act as the shares were sold to an accredited investor. The shares issued were sold for an aggregate offering price of \$25,000 at an average purchase price of approximately \$0.01 per share.

Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc. has also committed to purchase from us 350,000 units at \$10.00 per private unit (for an aggregate purchase price of \$3,500,000). This purchase will take place on a private placement basis simultaneously with the consummation of our initial public offering. It has also committed to purchase up to a maximum of 37,500 units in proportion to the amount of the underwriters' over-allotment option that is exercised. These issuances will be made pursuant to the exemption from registration contained in Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act.

No underwriting discounts or commissions were paid with respect to such sales.

Item 16. Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules.

(a) The following exhibits are filed as part of this Registration Statement:

Exhibit No.	Description
1.1	Form of Underwriting Agreement.
1.2	Business Combination Marketing Agreement between the Registrant at EarlyBirdCapital, Inc.
3.1	Certificate of Incorporation.*
3.2	Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation.*
3.3	By-laws.*
4.1	Specimen Unit Certificate.*
4.2	Specimen Common Stock Certificate.*
4.3	Specimen Warrant Certificate.*
4.4	Specimen Rights Certificate.*
4.5	Form of Warrant Agreement between Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company and the Registrant.*
4.6	Form of Rights Agreement between Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company and the Registrant.*
4.7	Form of Unit Purchase Option between the Registrant and EarlyBirdCapital, Inc.
5.1	Opinion of Graubard Miller.*
10.1	Form of Letter Agreement from each of the Registrant's sponsor, officers and directors.*
10.2	Form of Investment Management Trust Agreement between Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company and the Registrant.*
10.3	Form of Stock Escrow Agreement between the Registrant, Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company and Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc.*
10.4	Form of Promissory Note issued to Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc.*
10.5	Form of Registration Rights Agreement among the Registrant and Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc.*
10.6	Form of Subscription Agreement for private units.*
10.7	Form of Administrative Services Agreement.*
14	Code of Ethics.*
23.1	Consent of Marcum LLP.
23.2	Consent of Graubard Miller (included in Exhibit 5.1).*
24	Power of Attorney (included on signature page of this Registration Statement).

* Previously filed.

Item 17. Undertakings.

- (a) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes:
- (1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:
 - i. To include any prospectus required by Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933;
 - ii. To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than 20 percent change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement;
 - iii. To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement.
 - (2) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial *bona fide* offering thereof.
 - (3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.
 - (4) That for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933 in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:
 - (i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;
 - (ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned registrant;
 - (iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant; and
 - (iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned registrant to the purchaser.
- (b) The undersigned hereby undertakes to provide to the underwriter at the closing specified in the underwriting agreements, certificates in such denominations and registered in such names as required by the underwriter to permit prompt delivery to each purchaser.
- (c) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

(d) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that:

- (1) For purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, the information omitted from the form of prospectus filed as part of this registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A and contained in a form of prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(1) or (4) or 497(h) under the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of this registration statement as of the time it was declared effective.
- (2) For the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each post-effective amendment that contains a form of prospectus shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial *bona fide* offering thereof.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in Minneapolis, Minnesota, on the 27th day of September, 2017.

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.

By: /s/ Ken DeCubellis
Name: Ken DeCubellis
Title: Chairman of the Board and Chief
Executive Officer

POWER OF ATTORNEY

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, that each person whose signature appears below constitutes and appoints Ken DeCubellis, Michael Eisele and James Moe his true and lawful attorney-in-fact, with full power of substitution and resubstitution for him and in his name, place and stead, in any and all capacities to sign any and all amendments including pre- and post-effective amendments to this registration statement, any subsequent registration statement for the same offering which may be filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and pre- or post-effective amendments thereto, and to file the same, with all exhibits thereto, and other documents in connection therewith, with the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereby ratifying and confirming all that said attorney-in-fact or his substitute, each acting alone, may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue thereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this Registration Statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

Name	Position	Date
<u>/s/ Ken DeCubellis</u> Ken DeCubellis	Chairman of the Board and Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer)	September 27, 2017
* <u>James Moe</u>	Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)	September 27, 2017
* <u>Bradley Berman</u>	Director	September 27, 2017
* <u>Benjamin Oehler</u>	Director	September 27, 2017
* <u>Joseph Lahti</u>	Director	September 27, 2017
* <u>Lyle Berman</u>	Director	September 27, 2017
* By <u>Ken DeCubellis,</u> Power of Attorney		

10,000,000 Units

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.

UNDERWRITING AGREEMENT

New York, New York
[], 2017

EarlyBirdCapital, Inc.
366 Madison Avenue
New York, New York 10017

*As Representative of the Underwriters
named on Schedule A hereto*

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Black Ridge Acquisition Corp., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), hereby confirms its agreement with EarlyBirdCapital, Inc. (the “**Representative**”) and with the other underwriters named on Schedule A hereto (if any), for which the Representative is acting as representative (the Representative and such other underwriters being collectively referred to herein as the “**Underwriters**” or, each underwriter individually, an “**Underwriter**”) as follows:

1. Purchase and Sale of Securities.

1.1. Units.

1.1.1. Purchase of Units. On the basis of the representations and warranties herein contained, but subject to the terms and conditions herein set forth, the Company agrees to issue and sell to the several Underwriters, severally and not jointly, an aggregate of 10,000,000 units of the Company (the “**Firm Units**”) at a purchase price (net of discounts and commissions) of \$9.80 per Firm Unit. Each Unit consists of one share of common stock of the Company, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “**Common Stock**”), one right (the “**Right(s)**”) to receive one-tenth of one share of Common Stock on consummation of a Business Combination (defined below) and one warrant (the “**Warrant(s)**”) to purchase one share of Common Stock for \$11.50 per share. The Common Stock, Rights and Warrants included in the Firm Units will not be separately tradable until 90 days after the date hereof unless the Representative informs the Company of its decision to allow earlier separate trading, subject to the Company filing a Current Report on Form 8-K with the Commission (defined below) containing an audited balance sheet reflecting the Company’s receipt of the gross proceeds of the Offering (defined below) and the sale of the Private Units (defined below) and issuing a press release announcing when such separate trading will begin. The Underwriters, severally and not jointly, agree to purchase from the Company the number of Firm Units set forth opposite their respective names on Schedule A. The Firm Units are to be offered initially to the public (the “**Offering**”) at the offering price of \$10.00 per Firm Unit.

1.1.2. Payment and Delivery. Delivery and payment for the Firm Units shall be made at 10:00 A.M., New York time, on the second (2nd) Business Day following the commencement of trading of the Firm Units, or at such earlier time as shall be agreed upon by the Representative and the Company at the offices of the Representative or at such other place as shall be agreed upon by the Representative and the Company. The closing of the Offering is referred to herein as the “**Closing**” and the hour and date of delivery and payment for the Firm Units is referred to herein as the “**Closing Date.**” Payment for the Firm Units shall be made on the Closing Date through the facilities of Depository Trust Company (“**DTC**”) by wire transfer in Federal (same day) funds. The Company shall receive an aggregate of \$101,500,000 net proceeds from the sale of the Firm Units and the Private Units, of which \$100,500,000 shall be deposited on the Closing Date into the trust account (the “**Trust Account**”) established by the Company for the benefit of the Public Stockholders, as described in the Registration Statement (as defined in Section 2.1.1 below) and pursuant to the terms of an Investment Management Trust Agreement (the “**Trust Agreement**”) between the Company and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (“**CST&T**”) substantially in the form annexed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement. The remaining proceeds (less actual expense payments or other fees payable pursuant to this Agreement) shall be paid to the order of the Company upon delivery of certificates (in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Representative) representing the Firm Units (or through the facilities of the DTC for the account of the Representative). The Firm Units shall be registered in such name or names and in such authorized denominations as the Representative may request in writing at least two (2) Business Days (defined below) prior to the Closing Date. The Company will permit the Representative to examine and package the Firm Units for delivery at least one (1) full Business Day prior to the Closing Date. The Company shall not be obligated to sell or deliver the Firm Units except upon tender of payment by the Representative for all the Firm Units. As used herein, the term “**Business Day**” shall mean any day other than a Saturday, Sunday or any day on which national banks in New York, New York are not open for business, and the term “**Public Stockholders**” means the holders of Common Stock sold in the Offering or acquired in the aftermarket, including any of the Respondents (as defined in Section 2.14 below) to the extent they acquire such Common Stock in the Offering or in the aftermarket (and solely with respect to such shares).

1.2. Over-Allotment Option

1.2.1. The Representative shall have the option (the “**Over-Allotment Option**”) to purchase all or less than all of an additional 1,500,000 Units (the “**Option Units**”) solely for the purposes of covering any over-allotments in connection with the distribution and sale of the Firm Units. Such Option Units shall, at the Representative’s election, be purchased for each account of the several Underwriters in the same proportion as the number of Firm Units set forth opposite such Underwriter’s name on Schedule A hereto (subject to adjustment by the Representative to eliminate fractions). Such Option Units shall be identical in all respects to the Firm Units. The Firm Units and the Option Units are hereinafter collectively referred to as the “**Public Securities.**” No Option Units shall be sold or delivered unless the Firm Units previously have been, or simultaneously are, sold and delivered. The right to purchase the Option Units, or any portion thereof, may be exercised from time to time and to the extent not previously exercised may be surrendered and terminated at any time upon notice by the Representative to the Company. The purchase price to be paid for each Option Unit (net of discounts and commissions) will be \$9.80 per Option Unit.

1.2.2. Exercise of Option. The Over-Allotment Option granted pursuant to Section 1.2.1 hereof may be exercised by the Representative as to all (at any time) or any part (from time to time) of the Option Units within forty-five (45) days after the Effective Date. The Representative will not be under any obligation to purchase any Option Units prior to the exercise of the Over-Allotment Option. The Over-allotment Option granted hereby may be exercised by the giving of oral notice to the Company by the Representative, which must be confirmed in accordance with Section 10.1 herein, setting forth the number of Option Units to be purchased and the date and time for delivery of and payment for the Option Units, if other than the Closing Date (the “**Option Closing Date**”), which shall not be earlier than the Closing Date or be later than ten (10) full Business Days after the date of the notice or such other time as shall be agreed upon by the Company and the Representative, at the offices of the Representative or at such other place as shall be agreed upon by the Company and the Representative. Upon exercise of the Over-Allotment Option, the Company will become obligated to convey to the Representative, and, subject to the terms and conditions set forth herein, the Representative will become obligated to purchase, the number of Option Units specified in such notice.

1.2.3. Payment and Delivery. Payment for the Option Units shall be made on the Option Closing Date at the Representative’s election by wire transfer in Federal (same day) funds or by certified or bank cashier’s check(s) in New York Clearing House funds, payable as follows: \$9.80 per Option Unit shall be deposited in the Trust Fund pursuant to the Trust Agreement upon delivery of certificates (in form and substance satisfactory to the Representative) representing the Option Units (or through the facilities of DTC) for the account of the Representative). The certificates representing the Option Units to be delivered will be in such denominations and registered in such names as the Representative requests not less than two full business days prior to the Closing Date or the Option Closing Date, as the case may be, and will be made available to the Representative for inspection, checking and packaging at the aforesaid office of the Company’s transfer agent or correspondent not less than one full business day prior to such Closing Date.

1.3. Representative’s Securities.

1.3.1. The Company hereby agrees to issue and sell to the Representative (and/or its designees) on the Closing Date, for an aggregate purchase price of \$100, an option (“**Representative’s Purchase Option**”) to purchase up to an aggregate of 500,000 Units (the “**Representative’s Units**”). Each of the Representative’s Units is identical to the Firm Units. The Representative’s Purchase Option shall be exercisable for cash or on a cashless basis, in whole or in part, commencing on the later of the consummation of a Business Combination or one year from the Effective Date and expiring on the five-year anniversary of the Effective Date at an initial exercise price per Representative’s Unit of \$11.50. On the Closing Date, the Company shall deliver to the Representative, upon payment therefor, certificates for the Representative’s Purchase Option in the name or names and in such denominations as the Representative may request.

1.3.2. The Representative's Purchase Option, the Representative's Units, the Common Stock included in the Representative's Units, the Rights included in the Representative's Units (the "**Representative's Rights**"), the Warrants included in the Representative's Units (the "**Representative's Warrants**") and the Common Stock issuable pursuant to the terms of the Representative's Rights and Representative's Warrants are hereinafter referred to collectively as the "**Representative's Securities**." Delivery (and payment with respect to the Representative's Purchase Option) of the Representative's Securities shall be made on the Closing Date. The issuance of the Representative's Securities will be registered on the Registration Statement.

1.4. Private Placements.

1.4.1. In May 2017, the Company issued to Black Ridge Oil & Gas, Inc. (the "**Sponsor**") for aggregate consideration of \$25,000 an aggregate of 2,875,000 shares of Common Stock (the "**Founders' Shares**") in a private placement intended to be exempt from registration under Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Act**"). No underwriting discounts, commissions or placement fees have been or will be payable in connection with the sale of the Founders' Shares. The Founders' Shares shall be held in escrow and subject to restrictions on transfer as set forth in the Escrow Agreement (as defined in Section 2.24.3 below). The holders of Founders' Shares shall have no right to any liquidation distributions with respect to any portion of the Founders' Shares in the event the Company fails to consummate an initial merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, recapitalization, reorganization or other similar business combination, or entering into contractual arrangements, with one or more businesses or entities ("**Business Combination**") within the required time period. Additionally, the holders of Founders' Shares shall not have conversion rights with respect to the Founders' Shares nor shall they be entitled to sell such Founders' Shares to the Company in any tender offer in connection with a proposed Business Combination. To the extent that the Over-allotment Option is not exercised by the Underwriters in full or in part, up to 375,000 of the Founders' Shares shall be subject to forfeiture. The holders of the Founders' Shares will be required to forfeit only a number of Founders' Shares necessary to maintain their collective 20% ownership interest in the Common Stock after giving effect to the Offering and exercise, if any, of the Underwriters' Over-allotment Option (and excluding the purchase by the Sponsor of the Private Units and any shares purchased by them in the Offering).

1.4.2. Simultaneously with the Closing Date, the Sponsor will purchase from the Company pursuant to a Subscription Agreement (as defined in Section 2.24.2 below) 350,000 Units (the "**Private Units**") at a purchase price of \$10.00 per Private Unit in a private placement (the "**Private Placement**") intended to be exempt from registration under the Act. The terms of the Private Units are as described in the Prospectus (as defined in Section 2.1.1 below). No underwriting discounts, commissions or placement fees have been or will be payable in connection with the Private Placement. The Sponsor has also agreed that, in the event the Representative has exercised the Over-allotment Option, it (and/or its designees) will purchase up to 37,500 additional Private Units, and the Company shall cause to be deposited an amount of additional proceeds from the sale of such additional Private Units into the Trust Account such that the amount of funds in the Trust Account shall be \$10.05 per Public Share sold in the Offering.

1.5. Working Capital; Trust Account Proceeds.

1.5.1. Working Capital. Upon consummation of the Offering, it is intended that approximately \$500,000 of the net proceeds from the sale of the Firm Units and Private Units will be released to the Company to fund the working capital requirements of the Company.

1.5.2. Trust Account Proceeds. Interest income on the funds held in the Trust Account may be released to the Company from the Trust Account in accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement to pay any income taxes or other taxes incurred by the Company and to fund up to \$50,000 of liquidation expenses, all as more fully described in the Prospectus.

2. Representations and Warranties of the Company. The Company represents and warrants to the Underwriters as follows:

2.1. Filing of Registration Statement.

2.1.1. Pursuant to the Act. The Company has filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**Commission**”) a registration statement and an amendment or amendments thereto, on Form S-1 (File No. 333-220516), including any related preliminary prospectus (the “**Preliminary Prospectus**”, including any prospectus that is included in the registration statement immediately prior to the effectiveness of the registration statement), for the registration of the Public Securities under the Act, which registration statement and amendment or amendments have been prepared by the Company in conformity with the requirements of the Act, and the rules and regulations (the “**Regulations**”) of the Commission under the Act. Except as the context may otherwise require, such registration statement, as amended, on file with the Commission at the time the registration statement became effective (“**Effective Date**”), including the prospectus, financial statements, schedules, exhibits and all other documents filed as a part thereof or incorporated therein and all information deemed to be a part thereof as of such time pursuant to Rule 430A of the Regulations, together with the registration statement filed by the Company pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Act registering additional Public Securities (the “**Rule 462(b) Registration Statement**”), is hereinafter called the “**Registration Statement**,” and the form of the final prospectus dated the Effective Date included in the Registration Statement (or, if applicable, the form of final prospectus containing information permitted to be omitted at the time of effectiveness by Rule 430A of the Regulations filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424 of the Regulations), is hereinafter called the “**Prospectus**.” For purposes of this Agreement, “**Time of Sale**”, as used in the Act, means 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on the date of this Agreement. Prior to the Time of Sale, the Company prepared a preliminary prospectus, dated [____], 2017, for distribution by the Underwriters (the “**Statutory Prospectus**”). Other than the Registration Statement, together with any correspondence letters between the Company and/or counsel for the Company and the Commission, no other document with respect to the Registration Statement has heretofore been filed under the Act with the Commission. All of the Public Securities have been or will be registered under the Act pursuant to the Registration Statement. The Registration Statement has been declared effective by the Commission on the date hereof. If, subsequent to the date of this Agreement, the Company or the Representative has determined that at the Time of Sale the Statutory Prospectus included an untrue statement of a material fact or omitted a statement of material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading and have agreed to provide an opportunity to purchasers of the Firm Units to terminate their old purchase contracts and enter into new purchase contracts, then the Statutory Prospectus will be deemed to include any additional information available to purchasers at the time of entry into the first such new purchase contract.

2.1.2. Pursuant to the Exchange Act. The Company has filed with the Commission a Registration Statement on Form 8-A (File Number 001-[____]) providing for the registration under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “**Exchange Act**”), of the Units, Common Stock, Rights and Warrants. The registration of the Units, Common Stock, Rights and Warrants under the Exchange Act has been declared effective by the Commission on the date hereof.

2.2. No Stop Orders, etc. Neither the Commission nor, to the Company’s knowledge, any foreign or state regulatory authority has issued any order or threatened to issue any order preventing or suspending the use of any Statutory Prospectus or Prospectus or has instituted or, to the best of the Company’s knowledge, threatened to institute any proceedings with respect to such an order.

2.3. Disclosures in Registration Statement.

2.3.1. 10b-5 Representation. At the time of effectiveness of the Registration Statement (or at the effective time of any post-effective amendment to the Registration Statement) and at all times subsequent thereto up to the Closing Date, the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus contained or will contain all material statements that are required to be stated therein in accordance with the Act and the Regulations, and did or will, in all material respects, conform to the requirements of the Act and the Regulations. On the Effective Date and at the Time of Sale, the Registration Statement did not, and on the Closing Date it will not, contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary in order to make the statements therein not misleading; on the date of any filing pursuant to Rule 424(b) and on the Closing Date, the Prospectus (together with any supplement thereto) will not include any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; and at the Time of Sale, the Statutory Prospectus does not include any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; provided, however, that the representation and warranty made in this Section 2.3.1 does not apply to statements made or statements omitted in reliance upon and in conformity with written information furnished to the Company with respect to the Underwriters by the Underwriters expressly for use in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus or Prospectus or any amendment thereof or supplement thereto, which information, it is agreed, shall consist solely of the names of the Underwriters and the subsections entitled “Price Stabilization, Short Positions,” “Determination of Offering Price,” “Electronic Distribution” and “Selling Restrictions” included in the section captioned “Underwriting.”

2.3.2. Disclosure of Agreements. The agreements and documents described in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus conform to the descriptions thereof contained therein and there are no agreements or other documents required to be described in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus or the Prospectus or to be filed with the Commission as exhibits to the Registration Statement, that have not been so described or filed. Each agreement or other instrument (however characterized or described) to which the Company is a party or by which its property or business is or may be bound or affected and (i) that is referred to in the Registration Statement or attached as an exhibit thereto, or (ii) is material to the Company's business, has been duly and validly executed by the Company, is in full force and effect in all material respects and is enforceable against the Company and, to the Company's knowledge, the other parties thereto, in all material respects in accordance with its terms, except (x) as such enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally, (y) as enforceability of any indemnification or contribution provision may be limited under the foreign, federal and state securities laws, and (z) that the remedy of specific performance and injunctive and other forms of equitable relief may be subject to the equitable defenses and to the discretion of the court before which any proceeding therefor may be brought, and none of such agreements or instruments has been assigned by the Company, and neither the Company nor, to the Company's knowledge, any other party is in breach or default thereunder and, to the Company's knowledge, no event has occurred that, with the lapse of time or the giving of notice, or both, would constitute a breach or default thereunder. To the Company's knowledge, performance by the Company of the material provisions of such agreements or instruments will not result in a violation of any existing applicable law, rule, regulation, judgment, order or decree of any governmental agency or court, domestic or foreign, having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its assets or businesses, including, without limitation, those relating to environmental laws and regulations.

2.3.3. Prior Securities Transactions. No securities of the Company have been sold by the Company or by or on behalf of, or for the benefit of, any person or persons controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the Company since the date of the Company's formation, except as disclosed in the Registration Statement.

2.3.4. Regulations. The disclosures in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus concerning the effects of foreign, federal, state and local regulation on the Company's business as currently contemplated are correct in all material respects and do not omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances in which they were made, not misleading.

2.4. Changes After Dates in Registration Statement.

2.4.1. No Material Adverse Change. Since the respective dates as of which information is given in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, except as otherwise specifically stated therein: (i) there has been no material adverse change in the condition, financial or otherwise, or business prospects of the Company; (ii) there have been no material transactions entered into by the Company, other than as contemplated pursuant to this Agreement; (iii) no member of the Company's board of directors or management has resigned from any position with the Company; and (iv) no event or occurrence has taken place which materially impairs, or would likely materially impair, with the passage of time, the ability of the members of the Company's board of directors or management to act in their capacities with the Company as described in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus.

2.4.2. Recent Securities Transactions, etc. Subsequent to the respective dates as of which information is given in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus and except as may otherwise be indicated or contemplated herein or therein, the Company has not: (i) issued any securities or incurred any liability or obligation, direct or contingent, for borrowed money; or (ii) declared or paid any dividend or made any other distribution on or in respect to its capital stock.

2.5. Independent Accountants. Marcum LLP ("**Marcum**"), whose report is filed with the Commission as part of the Registration Statement and included in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, are independent registered public accountants as required by the Act, the Regulations and the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (the "**PCAOB**"), including the rules and regulations promulgated by such entity. To the Company's knowledge, Marcum is duly registered and in good standing with the PCAOB. Marcum has not, during the periods covered by the financial statements included in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, provided to the Company any non-audit services, as such term is used in Section 10A(g) of the Exchange Act.

2.6. Financial Statements; Statistical Data.

2.6.1. Financial Statements. The financial statements, including the notes thereto and supporting schedules included in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, fairly present in all material respects the financial position and the results of operations of the Company at the dates and for the periods to which they apply; and such financial statements have been prepared in conformity with United States generally accepted accounting principles (“GAAP”), consistently applied throughout the periods involved; and the supporting schedules included in the Registration Statement present fairly in all material respects the information required to be stated therein in conformity with the Regulations. No other financial statements or supporting schedules are required to be included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus or the Prospectus. The Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus disclose all material off-balance sheet transactions, arrangements, obligations (including contingent obligations), and other relationships of the Company with unconsolidated entities or other persons that may have a material current or future effect on the Company’s financial condition, changes in financial condition, results of operations, prospects, liquidity, capital expenditures, capital resources, or significant components of revenues or expenses. There are no pro forma or as adjusted financial statements which are required to be included in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus or the Prospectus in accordance with Regulation S-X of the Regulations which have not been included as so required.

2.6.2. Statistical Data. The statistical, industry-related and market-related data included in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and/or the Prospectus are based on or derived from sources which the Company reasonably and in good faith believes are reliable and accurate, and such data agree with the sources from which they are derived.

2.7. Authorized Capital; Options, etc. The Company had at the date or dates indicated in each of the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, as the case may be, duly authorized, issued and outstanding capitalization as set forth in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus. Based on the assumptions stated in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, the Company will have on the Closing Date the adjusted stock capitalization set forth therein. Except as set forth in, or contemplated by, the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, on the Effective Date and on the Closing Date, there will be no options, warrants, or other rights to purchase or otherwise acquire any authorized, but unissued Common Stock or any security convertible into Common Stock, or any contracts or commitments to issue or sell Common Stock or any such options, warrants, rights or convertible securities.

2.8. Valid Issuance of Securities, etc.

2.8.1. Outstanding Securities. All issued and outstanding Common Stock of the Company have been duly authorized and validly issued and are fully paid and non-assessable; the holders thereof have no rights of rescission with respect thereto, and are not subject to personal liability by reason of being such holders; and none of such securities were issued in violation of the preemptive rights of any holders of any security of the Company or similar contractual rights granted by the Company. The outstanding Common Stock conform to the descriptions thereof contained in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus. All offers, sales and any transfers of the outstanding Common Stock of the Company were at all relevant times either registered under the Act and the applicable state securities or Blue Sky laws or exempt from such registration requirements.

2.8.2. Securities To Be Sold

2.8.2.1. The Public Securities have been duly authorized and reserved for issuance and when issued and paid for in accordance with this Agreement, will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable; the holders thereof are not and will not be subject to personal liability by reason of being such holders; the Public Securities are not and will not be subject to the preemptive rights of any holders of any security of the Company or similar contractual rights granted by the Company; and all corporate action required to be taken for the authorization, issuance and sale of the Public Securities has been duly and validly taken. The Public Securities conform in all material respects to the descriptions thereof contained in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, as the case may be.

2.8.2.2. When issued, the Representative's Purchase Option, the Representative's Rights and the Representative's Warrants will constitute the valid and binding obligation of the Company to issue and sell, upon exercise thereof and payment of the exercise price therefor, the number and type of securities of the Company called for thereby in accordance with the terms thereof and such Representative's Purchase Option, the Representative's Rights and the Representative's Warrants are enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, except: (i) as such enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally; (ii) as enforceability of any indemnification or contribution provision may be limited under foreign, federal and state securities laws; and (iii) that the remedy of specific performance and injunctive and other forms of equitable relief may be subject to the equitable defenses and to the discretion of the court before which any proceeding therefor may be brought. The Common Stock underlying the Representative's Units, the Representative's Rights and the Representative's Warrants has been reserved for issuance upon the exercise of the Representative's Purchase Option upon payment of the consideration therefore, and when issued in accordance with the terms thereof, will be duly and validly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable; the holders thereof are not and will not be subject to personal liability by reason of being such holders. The Representative's Purchase Option, the Representative's Units, the shares of Common Stock underlying the Representative's Units, the Representative's Rights and the Representative's Warrants conform in all material respects to the descriptions thereof contained in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, as the case may be.

2.8.2.3. The Private Units and the Rights (the "**Private Rights**") and Warrants (the "**Private Warrants**") included within the Private Units have been duly authorized and reserved for issuance and when issued and paid for in accordance with the Subscription Agreement, will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable; the holders thereof are not and will not be subject to personal liability by reason of being such holders; the Private Units, Private Rights and Private Warrants are not and will not be subject to the preemptive rights of any holders of any security of the Company or similar contractual rights granted by the Company; and all corporate action required to be taken for the authorization, issuance and sale of the Private Units, Private Rights and Private Warrants has been duly and validly taken. The Private Units, Private Rights and Private Warrants conform in all material respects to the descriptions thereof contained in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, as the case may be.

2.8.2.4. The Founders' Shares have been duly authorized, duly and validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable; the holders thereof are not and will not be subject to personal liability by reason of being such holders; the Founders' Shares are not and will not be subject to the preemptive rights of any holders of any security of the Company or similar contractual rights granted by the Company; and all corporate action required to be taken for the authorization, issuance and sale of the Founders' Shares has been duly and validly taken. The Founders' Shares conform in all material respects to the descriptions thereof contained in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, as the case may be.

2.8.3. No Integration. Neither the Company nor any of its affiliates has, prior to the date hereof, made any offer or sale of any securities which are required to be "integrated" pursuant to the Act or the Regulations with the offer and sale of the Public Securities pursuant to the Registration Statement.

2.9. Registration Rights of Third Parties. Except as set forth in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, no holders of any securities of the Company or any rights exercisable for or convertible or exchangeable into securities of the Company have the right to require the Company to register any such securities of the Company under the Act or to include any such securities in a registration statement to be filed by the Company.

2.10. Validity and Binding Effect of Agreements. This Agreement, the Trust Agreement, the Subscription Agreement, the Escrow Agreement, the Services Agreement (as defined in Section 2.24.7 below), the Business Combination Marketing Agreement (as defined in Section 2.27 below), the Warrant Agreement (as defined in Section 2.28 below), the Rights Agreement (as defined in Section 2.26), the Registration Rights Agreement (as defined in Section 2.24.6) and the Representative's Purchase Option have been duly and validly authorized by the Company and, when executed and delivered by the Company and the other parties thereto, will constitute valid and binding agreements of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their respective terms, except: (i) as such enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally; (ii) as enforceability of any indemnification or contribution provision may be limited under foreign, federal and state securities laws; and (iii) that the remedy of specific performance and injunctive and other forms of equitable relief may be subject to the equitable defenses and to the discretion of the court before which any proceeding therefor may be brought.

2.11. No Conflicts, etc. The execution, delivery, and performance by the Company of this Agreement, the Trust Agreement, the Subscription Agreement, the Escrow Agreement, the Services Agreement, the Business Combination Marketing Agreement, the Warrant Agreement, the Rights Agreement, the Registration Rights Agreement and the Representative's Purchase Option, the consummation by the Company of the transactions herein and therein contemplated and the compliance by the Company with the terms hereof and thereof do not and will not, with or without the giving of notice or the lapse of time or both: (i) result in a breach or violation of, or conflict with any of the terms and provisions of, or constitute a default under, or result in the creation, modification, termination or imposition of any lien, charge or encumbrance upon any property or assets of the Company pursuant to the terms of any agreement, obligation, condition, covenant or instrument to which the Company is a party or bound or to which its property is subject except pursuant to the Trust Agreement; (ii) result in any violation of the provisions of the Certificate of Incorporation or Bylaws of the Company (collectively, the "**Charter Documents**"); or (iii) violate any existing applicable statute, law, rule, regulation, judgment, order or decree of any governmental agency or court, domestic or foreign, having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its properties, business or assets.

2.12. No Defaults; Violations. No material default or violation exists in the due performance and observance of any term, covenant or condition of any material license, contract, indenture, mortgage, deed of trust, note, loan or credit agreement, or any other agreement or instrument evidencing an obligation for borrowed money, or any other material agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or by which the Company may be bound or to which any of the properties or assets of the Company is subject. The Company is not in violation of any term or provision of its Charter Documents or in violation of any franchise, license, permit, applicable law, rule, regulation, judgment or decree of any governmental agency or court, domestic or foreign, having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its properties or businesses.

2.13. Corporate Power; Licenses; Consents.

2.13.1. Conduct of Business. The Company has all requisite corporate power and authority, and has all necessary authorizations, approvals, orders, licenses, certificates and permits of and from all governmental regulatory officials and bodies that it needs as of the date hereof to conduct its business for the purposes described in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus. The disclosures in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus concerning the effects of foreign, federal, state and local regulation on this Offering and the Company's business purpose as currently contemplated are correct in all material respects and do not omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary in order to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. Since its formation and except as described in the Registration Statement, the Company has conducted no business and has incurred no liabilities other than in connection with its formation and in furtherance of the Offering.

2.13.2. Transactions Contemplated Herein. The Company has all corporate power and authority to enter into this Agreement and to carry out the provisions and conditions hereof, and all consents, authorizations, approvals and orders required in connection therewith have been obtained. No consent, authorization or order of, and no filing with, any court, government agency or other body, foreign or domestic, is required for the valid issuance, sale and delivery, of the Public Securities and Representative's Securities and the consummation of the transactions and agreements contemplated by this Agreement, the Trust Agreement, the Subscription Agreement, the Escrow Agreement, the Services Agreement, the Business Combination Marketing Agreement, the Warrant Agreement, the Rights Agreement, the Registration Rights Agreement and the Representative's Purchase Option and as contemplated by the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and Prospectus, except with respect to applicable foreign, federal and state securities laws and the rules and regulations promulgated by the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. ("**FINRA**").

2.14. D&O Questionnaires. To the Company's knowledge, (i) all information contained in the questionnaires (the "**Questionnaires**") completed by each of the Company's officers, directors, 5% beneficial owners and owners of unregistered securities acquired within the past 180 days (the "**Respondents**") immediately prior to the initial filing of the Registration Statement and provided to the Representative, as such Questionnaires may have been updated from time to time and confirmed by each of the Respondents, (ii) the biographies previously provided to the Representative and (iii) the following information contained in Part III of the most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K filed with the Commission by the Sponsor: the biographical information contained in Item 10 thereof, the security ownership information regarding the Sponsor's executive officers and directors contained in Item 12 thereof and the information under the heading "Director Independence" in Item 13 thereof, is true and correct and the Company has not become aware of any information which would cause the information disclosed in the Questionnaires to become inaccurate and incorrect.

2.15. Litigation; Governmental Proceedings. There is no action, suit, proceeding, inquiry, arbitration, investigation, litigation or governmental proceeding pending or, to the Company's knowledge, threatened against, or involving the Company or, to the Company's knowledge, any of the Respondents, which has not been disclosed in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus.

2.16. Good Standing. The Company has been duly organized and is validly existing as a corporation and is in good standing under the laws of its jurisdiction of incorporation and is duly qualified to do business and is in good standing as a foreign corporation in each jurisdiction in which its ownership or lease of property or the conduct of business requires such qualification, except where the failure to qualify would not have a material adverse effect on the condition (financial or otherwise), prospects, earnings, business or properties of the Company, whether or not arising from transactions in the ordinary course of business, except as set forth in or contemplated in the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus (exclusive of any supplement thereto) (a "**Material Adverse Effect**").

2.17. No Consideration of a Business Combination. Prior to the date hereof, no Respondent has, and as of the Closing, the Company and such Respondents will not have: (a) had any specific Business Combination under consideration; or (b) directly or indirectly, contacted any prospective target business which the Company may seek to acquire (each, a "**Target Business**") or had any substantive discussions, formal or otherwise, with respect to effecting any potential Business Combination with the Company.

2.18. Transactions Affecting Disclosure to FINRA.

2.18.1. To the Company's knowledge, all information contained in the questionnaires (the "**FINRA Questionnaires**") completed by each of the Respondents and provided to the Representative, as such FINRA Questionnaires may have been updated from time to time and confirmed by each of the Respondents, is true and correct and the Company has not become aware of any information which would cause the information disclosed in the FINRA Questionnaires to become inaccurate and incorrect.

2.18.2. Except as described in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, there are no claims, payments, arrangements, agreements or understandings relating to the payment of a finder's, consulting or origination fee by the Company or any Respondent with respect to the sale of the Public Securities hereunder or any other arrangements, agreements or understandings of the Company or, to the Company's knowledge, any Respondent that may affect the Underwriters' compensation, as determined by FINRA.

2.18.3. Except as described herein or in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, the Company has not made any direct or indirect payments (in cash, securities or otherwise) to: (i) any person, as a finder's fee, consulting fee or otherwise, in consideration of such person raising capital for the Company or introducing to the Company persons who raised or provided capital to the Company; (ii) to any FINRA member; or (iii) to any person or entity that has any direct or indirect affiliation or association with any FINRA member, within the 180-day period prior to the initial filing date of the Registration Statement with the Commission.

2.18.4. To the Company's knowledge, except as set forth in the FINRA Questionnaires, no Respondent is a member of FINRA, or a person associated or affiliated with a member of FINRA.

2.18.5. To the Company's knowledge, except as set forth in the FINRA Questionnaires, no Respondent is an owner of stock or other securities of any member of FINRA (other than securities purchased on the open market).

2.18.6. To the Company's knowledge, except as set forth in the FINRA Questionnaires, no Respondent has made a subordinated loan to any member of FINRA.

2.18.7. No proceeds from the sale of the Public Securities or Private Units (excluding underwriting compensation) will be paid to any FINRA member, or any persons associated or affiliated with a member of FINRA, except as specifically authorized herein.

2.18.8. The Company has not issued any warrants or other securities, or granted any options, directly or indirectly to anyone who is a potential underwriter in the Offering or a related person (as defined by FINRA rules) of such an underwriter within the 180-day period prior to the initial filing date of the Registration Statement with the Commission, except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus.

2.18.9. To the Company's knowledge, except as set forth in the FINRA Questionnaires, no person to whom securities of the Company have been privately issued within the 180-day period prior to the initial filing date of the Registration Statement with the Commission has any relationship or affiliation or association with any member of FINRA.

2.18.10. To the Company's knowledge, no FINRA member intending to participate in the Offering has a conflict of interest (as defined by FINRA rules) with the Company.

2.18.11. Except with respect to the Representative in connection with the Offering, the Company has not entered into any agreement or arrangement (including, without limitation, any consulting agreement or any other type of agreement) during the 180-day period prior to the initial filing date of the Registration Statement with the Commission, which arrangement or agreement provides for the receipt of any item of value and/or the transfer or issuance of any warrants, options, or other securities from the Company to a FINRA member, any person associated with a member (as defined by FINRA rules), any potential underwriters in the Offering and/or any related persons.

2.19. Taxes.

2.19.1. There are no transfer taxes or other similar fees or charges under U.S. federal law or the laws of any U.S. state or any political subdivision thereof, required to be paid in connection with the execution and delivery of this Agreement or the issuance or sale by the Company of the Public Securities.

2.19.2. The Company has filed all U.S. federal, state and local tax returns that are required to be filed or has requested extensions thereof, except in any case in which the failure to so file would not have a Material Adverse Effect, and has paid all taxes required to be paid by it and any other assessment, fine or penalty levied against it, to the extent that any of the foregoing is due and payable, except for any such assessment, fine or penalty that is currently being contested in good faith or as would not have a Material Adverse Effect.

2.20. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act. Neither the Company nor any of the Respondents or any other person acting on behalf of the Company is aware of or has taken any action, directly or indirectly, that: (i) would result in a violation by such persons of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended, and the rules and regulations thereunder (the "FCPA") or otherwise subject the Company to any damage or penalty in any civil, criminal or governmental litigation or proceeding; (ii) if not done in the past, might reasonably be expected to have had a Material Adverse Effect or (iii) if not continued in the future, might reasonably be expected to materially and adversely affect the assets, business or operations of the Company, including, without limitation, given or agreed to give any money, gift or similar benefit (other than legal price concessions to customers in the ordinary course of business) to any customer, supplier, employee or agent of a customer or supplier, or official or employee of any governmental agency or instrumentality of any government (domestic or foreign) or any political party or candidate for office (domestic or foreign) or any political party or candidate for office (domestic or foreign) or other person who was, is, or may be in a position to help or hinder the business of the Company (or assist it in connection with any actual or proposed transaction). The Company's internal accounting controls and procedures are sufficient to cause the Company to comply with the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended.

2.21. Currency and Foreign Transactions Reporting Act. The operations of the Company are and have been conducted at all times in material compliance with applicable financial recordkeeping and reporting requirements of the Currency and Foreign Transaction Reporting Act of 1970, as amended, the money laundering statutes of all applicable jurisdictions, the rules and regulations thereunder and any related or similar rules, regulations or guidelines, issued, administered or enforced by any governmental agency (collectively, the “**Money Laundering Laws**”) and no action, suit or proceeding by or before any court or governmental agency, authority or body or any arbitrator involving the Company with respect to the Money Laundering Laws is pending or, to the best knowledge of the Company, threatened.

2.22. Bank Secrecy Act; Money Laundering; Patriot Act. Neither the Company, nor to the Company’s knowledge, any Respondent, has violated: (i) the Bank Secrecy Act, as amended, (ii) the Money Laundering Laws or (iii) the Uniting and Strengthening of America by Providing Appropriate Tools Required to Intercept and Obstruct Terrorism (USA PATRIOT ACT) Act of 2001, and/or the rules and regulations promulgated under any such law, or any successor law.

2.23. Officers’ Certificate. Any certificate signed by any duly authorized officer of the Company and delivered to the Representative or to its counsel shall be deemed a representation and warranty by the Company to the Underwriters as to the matters covered thereby.

2.24. Agreements With Company Affiliates.

2.24.1. Insider Letters. The Company has caused to be duly executed legally binding and enforceable agreements (except (i) as such enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or similar laws affecting creditors’ rights generally, (ii) as enforceability of any indemnification contribution provision may be limited under foreign, federal and state securities laws, and (iii) that the remedy of specific performance and injunctive and other forms of equitable relief may be subject to the equitable defenses and to the discretion of the court before which any proceeding therefor may be brought) in the form annexed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement (the “**Insider Letters**”), pursuant to which each of the Respondents agrees to certain matters, including but not limited to, the voting of Common Stock held by them and certain matters described as being agreed to by them under the “Proposed Business” section of the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and Prospectus.

2.24.2. Subscription Agreement. The Sponsor has executed and delivered a subscription agreement, the form of which is annexed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement (the “**Subscription Agreement**”), pursuant to which it has agreed, among other things, to purchase on the Closing Date the Private Units in the Private Placement. Pursuant to the Subscription Agreement, the Sponsor has waived any and all rights and claims it may have to any proceeds, and any interest thereon, held in the Trust Account in respect of the Common Stock included in or underlying the Private Units in the event that a Business Combination is not consummated and the Trust Account is liquidated in accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement.

2.24.3. Escrow Agreement. The Company has caused the holders of Founders’ Shares to enter into an escrow agreement (the “**Escrow Agreement**”) with CST&T substantially in the form filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement whereby the Founders’ Shares will be held in escrow by CST&T for a period (the “**Escrow Period**”) commencing on the Effective Date and expiring on (i) with respect to 50% of the Founders’ Shares, the earlier of the one year anniversary of the consummation of the Business Combination and the date on which the closing price of the Common Stock exceeds \$12.50 per share for any 20 trading days within a 30-trading day period following the consummation of the Business Combination, and (ii) with respect to the remaining 50% of the Founders’ Shares, the one year anniversary of the consummation of the Business Combination, or earlier in certain limited situations. During the Escrow Period, the holders of the Founders’ Shares shall be prohibited from selling or otherwise transferring such Founders’ Shares, except in certain limited circumstances set forth in the Escrow Agreement. To the Company’s knowledge, the Escrow Agreement is enforceable against each party thereto and will not, with or without the giving of notice or the lapse of time or both, result in a breach of, or conflict with, any of the terms and provisions of, or constitute a default under, an agreement or instrument to which any of the other parties thereto is a party.

2.24.4. Non-Competition/Solicitation. To the Company’s knowledge, no Respondent is subject to any non-competition agreement or non-solicitation agreement with any employer or prior employer which could materially affect such Respondent’s ability to be and act in the capacity of a director or officer of the Company, as applicable.

2.24.5. Loans and Advances. The Sponsor has made advances to the Company in the aggregate amount of \$125,000, as described in the Registration Statement (the “**Insider Advances**”) pursuant to the terms of a promissory note. The Insider Advances do not bear any interest and are repayable by the Company on the consummation of the Offering.

2.24.6. Registration Rights Agreement. The holders of the Founders’ Shares and Private Units have entered into a registration rights agreement (“**Registration Rights Agreement**”) substantially in the form annexed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement, whereby such holders will be entitled to certain registration rights with respect to their securities, as set forth in such Registration Rights Agreement and described more fully in the Registration Statement.

2.24.7. Administrative Services. The Company has entered into an agreement (“**Services Agreement**”) with the Sponsor substantially in the form annexed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement pursuant to which the Sponsor will make available to the Company, on the terms and subject to the conditions set forth therein, general and administrative services including office space, utilities and secretarial support for the Company’s use for \$10,000 per month, payable until the earlier of the consummation by the Company of a Business Combination or the liquidation of the Trust Account.

2.25. Investment Management Trust Agreement. The Company has entered into the Trust Agreement with respect to certain proceeds of the Offering and the Private Placement substantially in the form filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement, pursuant to which the funds held in the Trust Account may be released under limited circumstances. The Trust Agreement shall not be amended, modified or otherwise changed in any way that modifies the rights or obligations of the Company without the prior written consent of the Representative.

2.26. Rights Agreement. The Company has entered into a rights agreement with respect to the Rights, the Representative’s Rights and the Private Rights with CST&T substantially in the form filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement (the “**Rights Agreement**”).

2.27. Business Combination Marketing Agreement. The Company and the Representative have entered into a separate business combination marketing agreement substantially in the form filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement (the “**Business Combination Marketing Agreement**”).

2.28. Warrant Agreement. The Company has entered into a warrant agreement with respect to the Warrants, Representative’s Warrants and Private Warrants with CST&T substantially in the form filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement (the “**Warrant Agreement**”).

2.29. Investments. No more than 45% of the “value” (as defined in Section 2(a)(41) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 (“**Investment Company Act**”)) of the Company’s total assets (exclusive of cash items and “Government Securities,” as defined in Section 2(a)(16) of the Investment Company Act) consist of, and no more than 45% of the Company’s net income after taxes is derived from, securities other than Government Securities.

2.30. Investment Company Act. The Company is not required, and upon the issuance and sale of the Public Securities as herein contemplated and the application of the net proceeds therefrom as described in the Prospectus will not be required, to register as an “investment company” under the Investment Company Act.

2.31. Subsidiaries. The Company does not own an interest in any corporation, partnership, limited liability company, joint venture, trust or other business entity.

2.32. Related Party Transactions. No relationship, direct or indirect, exists between or among any of the Company or any Respondent, on the one hand, and any customer or supplier of the Company or any Respondent, on the other hand, which is required by the Act, the Exchange Act or the Regulations to be described in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, which is not so described as required. There are no outstanding loans, advances or guarantees of indebtedness by the Company to or for the benefit of any of the officers or directors of the Company or any of their respective family members, except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus. The Company has not extended or maintained credit, arranged for the extension of credit, or renewed an extension of credit, in the form of a personal loan to or for any director or officer of the Company.

2.33. No Influence. The Company has not offered, or caused the Underwriters to offer, the Firm Units to any person or entity with the intention of unlawfully influencing: (a) a customer or supplier of the Company or any affiliate of the Company to alter the customer's or supplier's level or type of business with the Company or such affiliate or (b) a journalist or publication to write or publish favorable information about the Company or any such affiliate.

2.34. Sarbanes-Oxley. The Company is in material compliance with the provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, as amended ("**SOX**"), and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder and related or similar rules and regulations promulgated by any governmental or self-regulatory entity or agency, that are applicable to it as of the date hereof.

2.35. Nasdaq Eligibility. As of the Effective Date, the Public Securities have been approved for listing on the Nasdaq Capital Markets ("**NASDAQ**"), subject to official notice of issuance and evidence of satisfactory distribution. There is and has been no failure on the part of the Company or any of the Company's directors or officers, in their capacities as such, to comply with (as and when applicable), and immediately following the effectiveness of the Registration Statement the Company will be in compliance with, the NASDAQ Marketplace Rules, as amended.

2.36. Emerging Growth Status. From the date of the Company's formation through the date hereof, the Company has been and is an "emerging growth company," as defined in Section 2(a) of the Act (an "**Emerging Growth Company**").

2.37. Free-Writing Prospectus and Testing-The-Waters Communications. The Company has not made any offer relating to the Public Securities that would constitute an issuer free writing prospectus, as defined in Rule 433 under the Act, or that would otherwise constitute a "free-writing prospectus" as defined in Rule 405 under the Act. The Company (a) has not engaged in any Testing-the-Waters Communication other than Testing-the-Waters Communications with the consent of the Representative with entities that are qualified institutional buyers within the meaning of Rule 144A under the Act or institutions that are accredited investors within the meaning of Rule 501 under the Act and (b) has not authorized anyone to engage in Testing-the-Waters Communications other than its officers and the Representative and individuals engaged by the Representative. The Company has not distributed any Written Testing-the-Waters Communications other than those listed on Schedule B hereto. "Testing-the-Waters Communication" means any oral or written communication with potential investors undertaken in reliance on Section 5(d) of the Act.

2.38. Disclosure Controls and Procedures. The Company maintains effective “disclosure controls and procedures” (as defined under Rule 13a-15(e) under the Exchange Act to the extent required by such rule).

2.39. Definition of “Knowledge”. As used in herein, the term “**knowledge of the Company**” (or similar language) shall mean the knowledge of the Company’s executive officers and directors, with the assumption that such officers and directors shall have made reasonable and diligent inquiry of the matters presented.

3. Covenants of the Company. The Company covenants and agrees as follows:

3.1. Amendments to Registration Statement. The Company will deliver to the Representative, prior to filing, any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement or Prospectus proposed to be filed after the Effective Date and shall not file any such amendment or supplement to which the Representative shall reasonably object in writing.

3.2. Federal Securities Laws.

3.2.1. Compliance. During the time when a prospectus is required to be delivered under the Act, the Company will use all reasonable efforts to comply with all requirements imposed upon it by the Act, the Regulations and the Exchange Act and by the regulations under the Exchange Act, as from time to time in force, so far as necessary to permit the continuance of sales of or dealings in the Public Securities in accordance with the provisions hereof and the Prospectus. If at any time when a Prospectus relating to the Public Securities is required to be delivered under the Act, any event shall have occurred as a result of which, in the opinion of counsel for the Company or counsel for the Underwriters, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus, as then amended or supplemented includes an untrue statement of a material fact or omits to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading, or if it is necessary during such period to amend the Registration Statement or amend or supplement the Statutory Prospectus and Prospectus to comply with the Act, the Company will notify the Representative promptly and prepare and file with the Commission, subject to Section 3.1 hereof, an appropriate amendment to the Registration Statement or amendment or supplement to the Statutory Prospectus and Prospectus (at the expense of the Company) so as to correct such statement or omission or effect such compliance.

3.2.2. Filing of Final Prospectus. The Company will promptly file the Prospectus (in form and substance satisfactory to the Representative) with the Commission pursuant to the requirements of Rule 424 of the Regulations.

3.2.3. Exchange Act Registration. For a period of five years from the Effective Date (except in connection with a going private transaction), or until such earlier time upon which the Trust Account is to be liquidated if a Business Combination has not been consummated as required by its Charter Documents (the “**Termination Date**”), the Company (i) will use its best efforts to maintain the registration of the Common Stock, Rights (until the consummation of the Business Combination) and Warrants under the provisions of the Exchange Act and (ii) will not deregister the Common Stock, Rights (prior to the consummation of the Business Combination) or Warrants under the Exchange Act without the prior written consent of the Representative.

3.2.4. Free Writing Prospectuses. The Company agrees that it will not make any offer relating to the Public Securities that would constitute an issuer free writing prospectus, as defined in Rule 433 under the Act.

3.2.5. Sarbanes-Oxley Compliance. As soon as it is legally required to do so, the Company shall take all actions necessary to obtain and thereafter maintain material compliance with each applicable provision of SOX and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder and related or similar rules and regulations promulgated by any other governmental or self-regulatory entity or agency with jurisdiction over the Company.

3.3. Emerging Growth Company Status. The Company will promptly notify the Representative if the Company ceases to be an Emerging Growth Company at any time prior to the earlier of five years after the consummation of the Company’s initial Business Combination, or the liquidation of the Trust Account if a Business Combination is not consummated by the Termination Date.

3.4. Intentionally Omitted.

3.5. Delivery of Materials to Underwriters. The Company will deliver to each of the several Underwriters, without charge and from time to time during the period when a prospectus is required to be delivered under the Act or the Exchange Act, such number of copies of each Statutory Prospectus, the Prospectus and all amendments and supplements to such documents as such Underwriters may reasonably request.

3.6. Effectiveness and Events Requiring Notice to the Representative. The Company will use its best efforts to cause the Registration Statement to remain effective and will notify the Representative immediately and confirm the notice in writing: (i) of the effectiveness of the Registration Statement and any amendment thereto; (ii) of the issuance by the Commission of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement, or any post-effective amendment thereto or preventing or suspending the use of any Preliminary Prospectus or the Prospectus or of the initiation, or the threatening, of any proceeding for that purpose; (iii) of the issuance by any foreign or state securities commission of any proceedings for the suspension of the qualification of the Public Securities for offering or sale in any jurisdiction or of the initiation, or the threatening, of any proceeding for that purpose; (iv) of the mailing and delivery to the Commission for filing of any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement or Prospectus; (v) of the receipt of any comments or request for any additional information from the Commission; and (vi) of the happening of any event during the period described in this Section 3.6 hereof that, in the judgment of the Company or its counsel, makes any statement of a material fact made in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus or the Prospectus untrue or that requires the making of any changes in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and Prospectus in order to make the statements therein, (with respect to the Prospectus and the Statutory Prospectus and in light of the circumstances under which they were made), not misleading. If the Commission or any foreign or state securities commission shall enter a stop order or suspend such qualification at any time, the Company will make every reasonable effort to obtain promptly the lifting of such order.

3.7. Review of Financial Statements. Until the earlier of five years from the Effective Date, or until the liquidation of the Trust Account if a Business Combination is not consummated by the Termination Date, the Company, at its expense, shall cause its regularly engaged independent certified public accountants to review (but not audit) the Company's financial statements for each of the first three fiscal quarters prior to the announcement of quarterly financial information, the filing of the Company's Form 10-Q quarterly report.

3.8. Affiliated Transactions.

3.8.1. Business Combinations. The Company will not consummate a Business Combination with an entity that is affiliated with any Respondent unless in each case the Company obtains an opinion from an independent investment banking firm, or another independent entity that commonly renders valuation opinions on the type of Target Business the Company is seeking to acquire, that the Business Combination is fair to the Company from a financial point of view and a majority of the Company's disinterested and independent directors (if there are any) approve such transaction.

3.8.2. Services Agreement. The Company has entered into the Services Agreement with the Sponsor pursuant to which the Sponsor will make available to the Company general and administrative services including office space, utilities and secretarial support for the Company's use for \$10,000 per month. Prior to the consummation of a Business Combination, the Company shall not enter into any other arrangement for the provision of such services with any Respondent that will require the Company to pay in excess of \$10,000 per month for such services.

3.8.3. Compensation. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, the Company shall not pay any Respondent or any of their affiliates any fees or compensation for services rendered to the Company prior to, or in connection with, either this Offering or the Business Combination.

3.9. Secondary Market Trading and Standard & Poor's. If the Company does not maintain the listing of the Public Securities on NASDAQ or another national securities exchange, the Company will (i) apply to be included in Standard & Poor's Daily News and Corporation Records Corporate Descriptions for a period of five years from the consummation of a Business Combination, (ii) take such commercially reasonable steps as may be necessary to obtain a secondary market trading exemption for the Company's securities in the State of [California] and (iii) take such other action as may be reasonably requested by the Representative to obtain a secondary market trading exemption in such other states as may be requested by the Representative; provided that no qualification shall be required in any jurisdiction where, as a result thereof, the Company would be subject to service of general process or to taxation as a foreign corporation doing business in such jurisdiction.

3.10. Investor Relations Firm. Promptly after the execution of a definitive agreement for a Business Combination, the Company shall retain an investor relations firm with the expertise necessary to assist the Company both before and after the consummation of the Business Combination for a term to be agreed upon by the Company and the Representative.

3.11. Reports to the Representative.

3.11.1. Periodic Reports, etc. For a period of five years from the Effective Date or until such earlier time upon which the Company is required to be liquidated and dissolved, the Company will furnish to the Representative and its counsel copies of such financial statements and other periodic and special reports as the Company from time to time furnishes generally to holders of any class of its securities, and promptly furnish to the Representative: (i) a copy of each periodic report the Company shall be required to file with the Commission; (ii) a copy of every press release and every news item and article with respect to the Company or its affairs which was released by the Company; (iii) a copy of each Current Report on Form 8-K and any Schedules 13D, 13G, 14D-1 or 13E-4 received or prepared by the Company; (iv) five copies of each registration statement filed by the Company with the Commission under the Securities Act; and (v) such additional documents and information with respect to the Company and the affairs of any future subsidiaries of the Company as the Representative may from time to time reasonably request; provided that the Representative shall sign, if requested by the Company, a Regulation FD compliant confidentiality agreement which is reasonably acceptable to the Representative and its counsel in connection with the Representative's receipt of such information. Documents filed with the Commission pursuant to Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis and Retrieval System ("EDGAR") shall be deemed to have been delivered to the Representative pursuant to this section.

3.11.2. For a period of five years following the Effective Date or until such earlier time upon which the Company is required to be liquidated, the Company shall retain a transfer agent and warrant agent acceptable to the Representative. CST&T is acceptable to the Underwriters.

3.12. Payment of Expenses. The Company hereby agrees to pay on each of the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, if any, to the extent not paid at Closing Date, or such later date as may be agreed to by the Representative in its sole discretion, all fees and expenses incident to the performance of the obligations of the Company under this Agreement, including, but not limited to: (i) the preparation, printing, filing and mailing (including the payment of postage with respect to such mailing) of the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus, and the final Prospectus and mailing of this Agreement and related documents, including the cost of all copies thereof and any amendments thereof or supplements thereto supplied to the Underwriters in quantities as may be required by the Underwriters; (ii) the printing, engraving, issuance and delivery of the Units, Common Stock, Rights and Warrants included in the Units, including any transfer or other taxes payable thereon; (iii) NASDAQ filing fees or, if necessary, the qualification of the Public Securities under state or foreign securities or Blue Sky laws; (iv) fees and expenses (including legal fees of the Representative's counsel not to exceed \$15,000) incurred in registering the Offering with FINRA; (v) fees and disbursements of the transfer, rights agent and warrant agent; (vi) the preparation and delivery of transaction lucite cubes or similar commemorative items in a style and quantity as reasonably requested by the Representative (not to exceed \$3,000); (vii) all costs and expenses of the Company associated with "road show" marketing and "due diligence" trips for the Company's management to meet with prospective investors, including without limitation, all travel, food and lodging expenses associated with such trips incurred by the Company or such management; and (viii) all other costs and expenses customarily borne by an issuer incident to the performance of its obligations hereunder which are not otherwise specifically provided for in this Section 3.12. The Company also agrees that it will pay for an investigative search firm of the Representative's choice to conduct an investigation of the principals of the Company as shall be mutually selected by the Representative and the Company (not to exceed \$24,500 in the aggregate). If the Offering is consummated, the Representative may deduct from the net proceeds of the Offering payable to the Company on the Closing Date the expenses set forth above (which shall be mutually agreed upon between the Company and the Representative prior to Closing) to be paid by the Company to the Representative and others. If the Offering is not consummated for any reason (other than a breach by the Representative of any of its obligations hereunder), then the Company shall reimburse the Representative in full for its out-of-pocket accountable expenses actually incurred through such date, including, without limitation, reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel to the Representative. It is acknowledged that the Company has already paid \$25,000 to the Representative. To the extent that the Representative's out-of-pocket expenses are less than this advance, the Representative shall refund the excess to the Company.

3.13. Application of Net Proceeds. The Company will apply the net proceeds from this Offering received by it in a manner substantially consistent with the application described under the caption "Use of Proceeds" in the Prospectus.

3.14. Delivery of Earnings Statements to Security Holders. The Company will make generally available to its security holders as soon as practicable, but not later than the first day of the sixteenth full calendar month following the Effective Date, an earnings statement (which need not be certified by independent public or independent certified public accountants unless required by the Act or the Regulations, but which shall satisfy the provisions of Rule 158(a) under Section 11(a) of the Act) covering a period of at least twelve consecutive months beginning after the Effective Date.

3.15. Notice to FINRA.

3.15.1. Assistance with Business Combination. For a period of ninety days following the Effective Date, in the event any person or entity (regardless of any FINRA affiliation or association) is engaged to assist the Company in its search for a Business Combination candidate or to provide any similar Business Combination-related services, the Company will provide the following information (the “**Business Combination Information**”) to the Representative: (i) complete details of all services and copies of agreements governing such services (which details or agreements may be appropriately redacted to account for privilege or confidentiality concerns); and (ii) justification as to why the person or entity providing the Business Combination-related services should not be considered an “underwriter and related person” with respect to the Company’s initial public offering, as such term is defined in Rule 5110 of FINRA’s Conduct Rules. The Company also agrees that proper disclosure of such arrangement or potential arrangement will be made in the proxy statement which the Company will file for purposes of soliciting stockholder approval for the Business Combination. Upon the Company’s delivery of the Business Combination Information to the Representative, the Company hereby expressly authorizes the Representative to provide such information directly to FINRA as a result of representations the Representative have made to FINRA in connection with the Offering.

3.15.2. Broker/Dealer. In the event the Company intends to register as a broker/dealer, merge with or acquire a registered broker/dealer, or otherwise become a member of FINRA, it shall promptly notify the Representative.

3.16. Stabilization. Neither the Company, nor, to its knowledge, any of its employees, officers, directors or stockholders (without the consent of the Representative) has taken or will take, directly or indirectly, any action designed to or that has constituted or that might reasonably be expected to cause or result in, under the Exchange Act, or otherwise, stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company to facilitate the sale or resale of the Units.

3.17. Internal Controls. From and after the Closing Date, the Company will maintain a system of internal accounting controls sufficient to provide reasonable assurances that: (i) transactions are executed in accordance with management’s general or specific authorization; (ii) transactions are recorded as necessary in order to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with GAAP and to maintain accountability for assets; (iii) access to assets is permitted only in accordance with management’s general or specific authorization; and (iv) the recorded accountability for assets is compared with existing assets at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any differences.

3.18. Accountants. For a period of five years from the Effective Date or until such earlier time upon which the Trust Account is required to be liquidated, the Company shall retain Marcum or other independent public accountants reasonably acceptable to the Representative.

3.19. Form 8-K's. The Company has retained Marcum to audit the balance sheet of the Company as of the Closing Date (the "**Audited Balance Sheet**") reflecting the receipt by the Company of the proceeds of the Offering and the Private Placement. Within four (4) Business Days of the Closing Date, the Company shall file a Current Report on Form 8-K with the Commission, which Report shall contain the Company's Audited Balance Sheet. If the Over-Allotment Option has not been exercised on the Effective Date, the Company will also file an amendment to the Form 8-K, or a new Form 8-K, to provide updated financial information of the Company to reflect the exercise and consummation of the Over-Allotment Option.

3.20. FINRA. Until the Option Closing Date, if any, the Company shall advise the Representative if it is aware that any 5% or greater stockholder of the Company becomes an affiliate or associated person of a FINRA member participating in the distribution of the Public Securities.

3.21. Corporate Proceedings. All corporate proceedings and other legal matters necessary to carry out the provisions of this Agreement and the transactions contemplated hereby shall have been done to the reasonable satisfaction to counsel for the Underwriters.

3.22. Investment Company. The Company shall cause the proceeds of the Offering to be held in the Trust Account to be invested only as set forth in the Trust Agreement as in effect on the date hereof and disclosed in the Prospectus. The Company will otherwise conduct its business in a manner so that it will not become subject to the Investment Company Act. Furthermore, once the Company consummates a Business Combination, it will be engaged in a business other than that of investing, reinvesting, owning, holding or trading securities.

3.23. Press Releases. The Company agrees that it will not issue press releases or engage in any other publicity, without the Representative's prior written consent (not to be unreasonably withheld), for a period of twenty-five (25) days after the Closing Date; provided that in no event shall the Company be prohibited from issuing any press release or engaging in any other publicity required by law.

3.24. Electronic Prospectus. The Company shall cause to be prepared and delivered to the Representative, at its expense, promptly, but in no event later than two (2) Business Days from the effective date of this Agreement, an Electronic Prospectus to be used by the Underwriters in connection with the Offering. As used herein, the term “**Electronic Prospectus**” means a form of prospectus, and any amendment or supplement thereto, that meets each of the following conditions: (i) it shall be encoded in an electronic format, satisfactory to the Representative, that may be transmitted electronically by the other Underwriters to offerees and purchasers of the Common Stock for at least the period during which a Prospectus relating to the Common Stock is required to be delivered under the Act; (ii) it shall disclose the same information as the paper prospectus and prospectus filed pursuant to EDGAR, except to the extent that graphic and image material cannot be disseminated electronically, in which case such graphic and image material shall be replaced in the electronic prospectus with a fair and accurate narrative description or tabular representation of such material, as appropriate; and (iii) it shall be in or convertible into a paper format or an electronic format, satisfactory to the Representative, that will allow recipients thereof to store and have continuously ready access to the prospectus at any future time, without charge to such recipients (other than any fee charged for subscription to the Internet as a whole and for on-line time). The Company hereby confirms that it has included or will include in the Prospectus filed pursuant to EDGAR or otherwise with the Commission and in the Registration Statement at the time it was declared effective an undertaking that, upon receipt of a request by an investor or his or her representative within the period when a prospectus relating to the Common Stock is required to be delivered under the Act, the Company shall transmit or cause to be transmitted promptly, without charge, a paper copy of the Prospectus.

3.25. Future Financings. The Company agrees that neither it, nor any successor or subsidiary of the Company, will consummate any public or private equity or debt financing prior to or in connection with the consummation of a Business Combination, unless all investors in such financing expressly waive, in writing, any rights in or claims against the Trust Account.

3.26. NASDAQ Maintenance. Until the consummation of a Business Combination, the Company will use commercially reasonable efforts to maintain the listing by NASDAQ of the Units and the Common Stock, Rights and Warrants included within the Units.

3.27. Private Placement Proceeds. On the Closing Date, the Company shall cause to be deposited \$3,500,000 of proceeds from the Private Placement into the Trust Account. On the Option Closing Date, if any, the Company shall cause to be deposited an amount of additional proceeds from the additional Private Units sold on the Option Closing Date into the Trust Account such that the amount of funds in the Trust Account shall be \$10.05 per Public Share sold in the Offering.

3.28. Reservation of Shares. The Company will reserve and keep available that maximum number of its authorized but unissued securities which are issuable pursuant to the Rights, the Warrants, the Private Rights, the Private Warrants, the Representative’s Rights and the Representative’s Warrants outstanding from time to time.

3.29. Testing-the-Waters Communications. If at any time following the distribution of any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication, there occurred or occurs an event or development as a result of which such Written Testing-the-Waters Communication included or would include any untrue statement of a material fact or omitted or would omit to state any material fact necessary to make the statements therein in light of the circumstances existing at that subsequent time, not misleading, the Company will promptly (i) notify the Representative so that use of the Written Testing-the-Waters Communication may cease until it is amended or supplemented; (ii) amend or supplement, at its own expense, such Written Testing-the-Waters Communication to eliminate or correct such untrue statement or omission; and (iii) supply any amendment or supplement to the Representative in such quantities as may be reasonably requested.

4. Conditions.

4.1. Conditions of Underwriters' Obligations. The obligations of the several Underwriters to purchase and pay for the Public Securities, as provided herein, shall be subject to the continuing accuracy of the representations and warranties of the Company as of the date hereof and as of the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, if any, to the accuracy of the statements of officers of the Company made pursuant to the provisions hereof and to the performance by the Company of its obligations hereunder and to the following conditions:

4.1.1. Regulatory Matters.

4.1.1.1. Effectiveness of Registration Statement. The Registration Statement shall have become effective not later than 5:00 p.m., New York time, on the date of this Agreement or such later date and time as shall be consented to in writing by the Representative, and, at the Closing Date, no stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement shall have been issued and no proceedings for the purpose shall have been instituted or shall be pending or contemplated by the Commission and any request on the part of the Commission for additional information shall have been complied with.

4.1.1.2. FINRA Clearance. By the Effective Date, the Representative shall have received clearance from FINRA as to the amount of compensation allowable or payable to the Underwriters as described in the Registration Statement.

4.1.1.3. No Commission Stop Order. At the Closing Date, the Commission has not issued any order or threatened to issue any order preventing or suspending the use of any Preliminary Prospectus, the Prospectus or any part thereof, and has not instituted or, to the Company's knowledge, threatened to institute any proceedings with respect to such an order.

4.1.1.4. NASDAQ Listing. The Public Securities shall have been approved for listing on NASDAQ, subject to official notice of issuance and evidence of satisfactory distribution.

4.1.2. Company Counsel Matters.

4.1.2.1. Opinion of Company Counsel. On each of the Closing Date or the Option Closing Date, if any, the Representative shall have received the favorable opinion (along with negative assurance letter) of Graubard Miller, counsel to the Company, addressed to the Representative as representative for the several Underwriters and in form mutually agreed to by the Company and the Representative.

4.1.2.2. Reliance. In rendering such opinion, such counsel may rely: (i) as to matters involving the application of laws other than the laws of the United States and jurisdictions in which they are admitted, to the extent such counsel deems proper and to the extent specified in such opinion, if at all, upon an opinion or opinions (in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Representative) of other counsel reasonably acceptable to the Representative, familiar with the applicable laws; and (ii) as to matters of fact, to the extent they deem proper, on certificates or other written statements of officers of the Company and officers of departments of various jurisdiction having custody of documents respecting the corporate existence or good standing of the Company, provided that copies of any such statements or certificates shall be delivered to the Underwriters' counsel if requested. The opinion of counsel for the Company and any opinion relied upon by such counsel for the Company shall include a statement to the effect that it may be relied upon by counsel for the Underwriters in its opinion delivered to the Underwriters.

4.1.3. Cold Comfort Letter. At the time this Agreement is executed, and at the Closing Date and Option Closing Date, if any, the Representative shall have received a letter, addressed to the Representative as representative for the several Underwriters and in form and substance satisfactory in all respects (including the non-material nature of the changes or decreases, if any, referred to in clause (iii) below) to the Representative from Marcum dated, respectively, as of the date of this Agreement and as of the Closing Date and Option Closing Date, if any:

(i) Confirming that they are independent accountants with respect to the Company within the meaning of the Act and the applicable Regulations and that they have not, during the periods covered by the financial statements included in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, provided to the Company any non-audit services, as such term is used in Section 10A(g) of the Exchange Act;

(ii) Stating that in their opinion the financial statements of the Company included in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the published Regulations thereunder;

(iii) Stating that, on the basis of a limited review which included a reading of the latest available unaudited interim financial statements of the Company (with an indication of the date of the latest available unaudited interim financial statements), a reading of the latest available minutes of the stockholders and board of directors and the various committees of the board of directors, consultations with officers and other employees of the Company responsible for financial and accounting matters and other specified procedures and inquiries, nothing has come to their attention which would lead them to believe that: (a) the unaudited financial statements of the Company included in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus do not comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the Regulations or are not fairly presented in conformity with GAAP applied on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited financial statements of the Company included in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus; or (b) at a date immediately prior to the Effective Date or Closing Date, as the case may be, there was any change in the capital stock or long-term debt of the Company, or any decrease in the stockholders' equity of the Company as compared with amounts shown in the May 31, 2017 balance sheet included in the Registration Statement, other than as set forth in or contemplated by the Registration Statement, or, if there was any decrease, setting forth the amount of such decrease, and (c) during the period from May 31, 2017 to a specified date immediately prior to the Effective Date or Closing Date, as the case may be, there was any changes in revenues, net earnings (losses), or net earnings (losses) per share of Common Stock, in each case as compared with the Statement of Operations for the period from May 9, 2017 (Inception) to May 31, 2017 included in the Registration Statement, or, if there was any such change, setting forth the amount of such change;

(iv) Stating that they have compared specific dollar amounts, numbers of shares, percentages of revenues and earnings, statements and other financial information pertaining to the Company set forth in the Registration Statement in each case to the extent that such amounts, numbers, percentages, statements and information may be derived from the general accounting records, including work sheets, of the Company and excluding any questions requiring an interpretation by legal counsel, with the results obtained from the application of specified readings, inquiries and other appropriate procedures (which procedures do not constitute an examination in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards) set forth in the letter and found them to be in agreement; and

(v) Statements as to such other matters incident to the transaction contemplated hereby as the Representative may reasonably request.

4.1.4. Officers' Certificates.

4.1.4.1. Officers' Certificate. As of each of the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, if any, the Representative shall have received a certificate of the Company signed by the Chairman of the Board, President or Chief Financial Officer (in their capacities as such), respectively, to the effect that the Company has performed all covenants and complied with all conditions required by this Agreement to be performed or complied with by the Company prior to and as of the Closing Date and that the conditions set forth in this Section 4 hereof have been satisfied as of such date and that, as of Closing Date, the representations and warranties of the Company set forth in Section 2 hereof are true and correct. In addition, the Representative will have received such other and further certificates of officers of the Company as the Representative may reasonably request.

4.1.4.2. Secretary's Certificate. As of each of the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, if any, the Representative shall have received a certificate of the Company signed by the Secretary of the Company certifying: (i) that the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws of the Company are true and complete, have not been modified and are in full force and effect; (ii) that the resolutions relating to the Offering are in full force and effect and have not been modified; (iii) all correspondence between the Company or its counsel and the Commission; (iv) all correspondence between the Company or its counsel and NASDAQ; and (v) as to the incumbency of the officers of the Company. The documents referred to in such certificate shall be attached to such certificate.

4.1.5. No Material Changes. Prior to each of the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, if any: (i) there shall have been no material adverse change or development involving a material adverse change in the condition or prospects or the business activities, financial or otherwise, of the Company from the latest dates as of which such condition is set forth in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and Prospectus; (ii) no action suit or proceeding, at law or in equity, shall have been pending or threatened against the Company or any Respondent before or by any court or foreign, federal or state commission, board or other administrative agency wherein an unfavorable decision, ruling or finding may materially adversely affect the business, operations, prospects or financial condition or income of the Company, except as set forth in the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and Prospectus; (iii) no stop order shall have been issued under the Act against the Company and no proceedings therefor shall have been initiated or threatened by the Commission; and (iv) the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus and the Prospectus and any amendments or supplements thereto shall contain all material statements which are required to be stated therein in accordance with the Act and the Regulations and shall conform in all material respects to the requirements of the Act and the Regulations, and none of the Registration Statement, the Statutory Prospectus or the Prospectus, or any amendment or supplement thereto shall contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omits to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein (in the case of the Statutory Prospectus and Prospectus, in light of the circumstances under which they were made), not misleading.

4.1.6. Delivery of Agreements and Securities. On the Effective Date, the Company shall have delivered to the Representative executed copies of the Trust Agreement, the Subscription Agreement, the Escrow Agreement, the Services Agreement, the Business Combination Marketing Agreement, the Warrant Agreement, the Rights Agreement, the Registration Rights Agreement and all of the Insider Letters. On the Closing Date, the Company shall have delivered to the Representative the Representative's Purchase Option.

4.1.7. Private Units. On the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, as applicable, the Private Units have been purchased as provided for in the Subscription Agreement and the purchase price for such securities shall be deposited into the Trust Account.

5. Indemnification.

5.1. Indemnification of Underwriters.

5.1.1. General. Subject to the conditions set forth below, the Company agrees to indemnify and hold harmless each of the Underwriters and each dealer selected by the Representative that participates in the offer and sale of the Public Securities (each a “**Selected Dealer**”) and each of their respective directors, officers, partners and employees and each person, if any, who controls any such Underwriter or Selected Dealer (“**Controlling Person**”) within the meaning of Section 15 of the Act or Section 20(a) of the Exchange Act, and its counsel, against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense whatsoever (including but not limited to any and all legal or other expenses reasonably incurred in investigating, preparing or defending against any litigation, commenced or threatened, or any claim whatsoever, whether arising out of any action between any of the Underwriters and the Company or between any of the Underwriters and any third party or otherwise) to which they or any of them may become subject under the Act, the Exchange Act or any other foreign, federal, state or local statute, law, rule, regulation or ordinance or at common law or otherwise or under the laws, rules and regulation of foreign countries, arising out of or based upon any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in (i) any Preliminary Prospectus, the Registration Statement, or the Prospectus (as from time to time each may be amended and supplemented); (ii) in any post-effective amendment or amendments or any new registration statement and prospectus relating to any of the Public Securities; or (iii) any application or other document or written communication (in this Section 5 collectively called “**application**”) executed by the Company or based upon written information furnished by the Company in any jurisdiction in order to qualify the Public Securities under the securities laws thereof or filed with the Commission, any foreign or state securities commission or agency, NASDAQ (in each case other than statements contained in the section captioned “Selling Restrictions”); or the omission or alleged omission therefrom of a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading, unless such statement or omission was made in reliance upon and in conformity with written information furnished to the Company with respect to an Underwriter by or on behalf of such Underwriter expressly for use in any Preliminary Prospectus, the Registration Statement the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereof, or in any application, as the case may be, which furnished written information, it is expressly agreed, consists solely of the information described in clause (ii) of the last sentence of Section 2.3.1. With respect to any untrue statement or omission or alleged untrue statement or omission made in the Preliminary Prospectus, the indemnity agreement contained in this paragraph shall not inure to the benefit of any Underwriter to the extent that any loss, liability, claim, damage or expense of such Underwriter results from the fact that a copy of the Prospectus was not given or sent to the person asserting any such loss, liability, claim or damage at or prior to the written confirmation of sale of the Public Securities to such person as required by the Act and the Regulations, and if the untrue statement or omission has been corrected in the Prospectus, unless such failure to deliver the Prospectus was a result of non-compliance by the Company with its obligations under Section 3.5 hereof. The Company agrees promptly to notify the Representative of the commencement of any litigation or proceedings against the Company or any of its officers, directors or controlling persons in connection with the issue and sale of the Public Securities or in connection with the Preliminary Prospectus, the Registration Statement or the Prospectus.

5.1.2. Procedure. If any action is brought against an Underwriter or controlling person in respect of which indemnity may be sought against the Company pursuant to Section 5.1.1, such Underwriter shall promptly notify the Company in writing of the institution of such action and the Company shall assume the defense of such action, including the employment and fees of counsel (subject to the reasonable approval of such Underwriter) and payment of actual expenses. Such Underwriter or controlling person shall have the right to employ its or their own counsel in any such case, but the fees and expenses of such counsel shall be at the expense of such Underwriter or such controlling person unless: (i) the employment of such counsel at the expense of the Company shall have been authorized in writing by the Company in connection with the defense of such action; (ii) the Company shall not have employed counsel to have charge of the defense of such action; or (iii) counsel to such indemnified party or parties shall have reasonably concluded that there may be defenses available to it or them which are different from or additional to those available to the Company (in which case the Company shall not have the right to direct the defense of such action on behalf of the indemnified party or parties), in any of which events the reasonable fees and expenses of not more than one additional firm of attorneys selected by the Underwriter and/or controlling person shall be borne by the Company. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, if the Underwriter or controlling person shall assume the defense of such action as provided above, the Company shall have the right to approve the terms of any settlement of such action which approval shall not be unreasonably withheld.

5.2. Indemnification of the Company. Each Underwriter, severally and not jointly, agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Company, its directors, officers, and employees and agents who control the Company within the meaning of Section 15 of the Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act, and its counsel, against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense described in the foregoing indemnity from the Company to the several Underwriters, as incurred, but only with respect to untrue statements or omissions, or alleged untrue statements or omissions made in the Registration Statement, any Preliminary Prospectus, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto, or in any application, in reliance upon, and in strict conformity with, written information furnished to the Company with respect to such Underwriter by or on behalf of the Underwriter expressly for use in such Registration Statement, Preliminary Prospectus, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto or in any such application, which furnished written information, it is expressly agreed, consists solely of the information described in clause (ii) of the last sentence of Section 2.3.1. In case any action shall be brought against the Company or any other person so indemnified based on any Preliminary Prospectus, the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto or any application, and in respect of which indemnity may be sought against any Underwriter, such Underwriter shall have the rights and duties given to the Company, and the Company and each other person so indemnified shall have the rights and duties given to the several Underwriters by the provisions of Section 5.1.2.

5.3. Contribution.

5.3.1. Contribution Rights. In order to provide for just and equitable contribution under the Act in any case in which (i) any person entitled to indemnification under this Section 5 makes claim for indemnification pursuant hereto but it is judicially determined (by the entry of a final judgment or decree by a court of competent jurisdiction and the expiration of time to appeal or the denial of the last right of appeal) that such indemnification may not be enforced in such case notwithstanding the fact that this Section 5 provides for indemnification in such case, or (ii) contribution under the Act, the Exchange Act or otherwise may be required on the part of any such person in circumstances for which indemnification is provided under this Section 5 but is unavailable, then, and in each such case, the Company and the Underwriters shall contribute to the aggregate losses, liabilities, claims, damages and expenses of the nature contemplated by said indemnity agreement incurred by the Company and the Underwriters, as incurred, in such proportions that the Underwriters are responsible for that portion represented by the percentage that the underwriting discount appearing on the cover page of the Prospectus bears to the initial offering price appearing thereon and the Company is responsible for the balance; provided, that, no person guilty of a fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the Act) shall be entitled to contribution from any person who was not guilty of such fraudulent misrepresentation. Notwithstanding the provisions of this Section 5.3.1, no Underwriter shall be required to contribute any amount in excess of the amount by which the total price at which the Public Securities underwritten by it and distributed to the public were offered to the public exceeds the amount of any damages that such Underwriter has otherwise been required to pay in respect of such losses, liabilities, claims, damages and expenses. For purposes of this Section, each director, officer and employee of an Underwriter or the Company, as applicable, and each person, if any, who controls an Underwriter or the Company, as applicable, within the meaning of Section 15 of the Act shall have the same rights to contribution as the Underwriters or the Company, as applicable.

5 . 3 . 2 . Contribution Procedure. Within fifteen days after receipt by any party to this Agreement (or its representatives) of notice of the commencement of any action, suit or proceeding, such party will, if a claim for contribution in respect thereof is to be made against another party (“**contributing party**”), notify the contributing party of the commencement thereof, but the omission to so notify the contributing party will not relieve it from any liability which it may have to any other party other than for contribution hereunder. In case any such action, suit or proceeding is brought against any party, and such party notifies a contributing party or its representatives of the commencement thereof within the aforesaid fifteen days, the contributing party will be entitled to participate therein with the notifying party and any other contributing party similarly notified. Any such contributing party shall not be liable to any party seeking contribution on account of any settlement of any claim, action or proceeding effected by such party seeking contribution on account of any settlement of any claim, action or proceeding effected by such party seeking contribution without the written consent of such contributing party. The contribution provisions contained in this Section are intended to supersede, to the extent permitted by law, any right to contribution under the Act, the Exchange Act or otherwise available. The Underwriters’ obligations to contribute pursuant to this Section 5.3 are several and not joint.

6. Default by an Underwriter.

6.1. Default Not Exceeding 10% of Firm Units. If any Underwriter or Underwriters shall default in its or their obligations to purchase the Firm Units and if the number of the Firm Units with respect to which such default relates does not exceed in the aggregate 10% of the number of Firm Units that all Underwriters have agreed to purchase hereunder, then such Firm Units to which the default relates shall be purchased by the non-defaulting Underwriters in proportion to their respective commitments hereunder.

6.2. Default Exceeding 10% of Firm Units. In the event that the default addressed in Section 6.1 above relates to more than 10% of the Firm Units, the Representative may, in its discretion, arrange for it or for another party or parties to purchase such Firm Units to which such default relates on the terms contained herein. If within one (1) Business Day after such default relating to more than 10% of the Firm Units the Representative does not arrange for the purchase of such Firm Units, then the Company shall be entitled to a further period of one (1) Business Day within which to procure another party or parties satisfactory to the Representative to purchase said Firm Units on such terms. In the event that neither the Representative nor the Company arrange for the purchase of the Firm Units to which a default relates as provided in this Section 6, this Agreement may be terminated by the Representative or the Company without liability on the part of the Company (except as provided in Sections 3.12 and 5 hereof) or the several Underwriters (except as provided in Section 5 hereof); *provided* that nothing herein shall relieve a defaulting Underwriter of its liability, if any, to the other several Underwriters and to the Company for damages occasioned by its default hereunder.

6.3. Postponement of Closing Date. In the event that the Firm Units to which the default relates are to be purchased by the non-defaulting Underwriters, or are to be purchased by another party or parties as aforesaid, the Representative or the Company shall have the right to postpone the Closing Date for a reasonable period, but not in any event exceeding five (5) Business Days, in order to effect whatever changes may thereby be made necessary in the Registration Statement and/or the Prospectus, as the case may be, or in any other documents and arrangements, and the Company agrees to file promptly any amendment to, or to supplement, the Registration Statement and/or the Prospectus, as the case may be, that in the reasonable opinion of counsel for the Underwriters may thereby be made necessary. The term "Underwriter" as used in this Agreement shall include any party substituted under this Section 6 with like effect as if it had originally been a party to this Agreement with respect to such securities.

7. Additional Covenants.

7.1. Additional Shares or Options. Except as described in the Registration Statement, the Company hereby agrees that until the Company consummates a Business Combination, it shall not issue any Common Stock or any options or other securities convertible into Common Stock or any shares of preferred stock which participate in any manner in the Trust Account or which vote on a Business Combination.

7.2. Trust Account Waiver Acknowledgments. The Company hereby agrees that, prior to commencing its due diligence investigation of any Target Business or obtaining the services of any vendor, it will use its best efforts to have such Target Business or vendor acknowledge in writing, whether through a letter of intent, memorandum of understanding, agreement in principle or other similar document (and subsequently acknowledges the same in any definitive document replacing any of the foregoing), that they have no right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies of the Trust Account and waiving any such claim it may have in the future as a result of, or arising out of, any negotiations, contracts or agreements with the Company and will not seek recourse against the Trust Account for any reason whatsoever. The foregoing acknowledgment shall substantially be in the form attached hereto as Exhibits A and B, respectively.

7.3. Insider Letters. The Company shall not take any action or omit to take any action which would cause a breach of any of the Insider Letters executed between each Respondent and the Representative and will not allow any amendments to, or waivers of, such Insider Letters without the prior written consent of the Representative.

7.4. Tender Offer, Proxy and Other Information. The Company shall provide the Representative with copies of all proxy or tender offer documentation and other information and all related material sent to Public Stockholders in connection with a Business Combination.

7.5. Rule 419. The Company agrees that it will use its best efforts to prevent the Company from becoming subject to Rule 419 under the Act prior to the consummation of any Business Combination, including, but not limited to, using its best efforts to prevent any of the Company's outstanding securities from being deemed to be a "penny stock" as defined in Rule 3a-51-1 under the Exchange Act during such period.

7.6. Presentation of Potential Target Businesses. The Company shall cause each of the Respondents to agree that, in order to minimize potential conflicts of interest which may arise from multiple affiliations, the Respondents will present to the Company for its consideration, prior to presentation to any other person or company, any suitable opportunity to acquire an operating business, until the earlier of the consummation by the Company of a Business Combination or the liquidation of the Trust Account, subject to any pre-existing fiduciary obligations the Respondents might have.

7.7. Target Fair Market Value. The Company agrees that the Target Business that it acquires must have a fair market value equal to at least 80% of the balance in the Trust Account (excluding any taxes) at the time of signing the definitive agreement for the Business Combination with such Target Business. The fair market value of such business must be determined by the Board of Directors of the Company based upon standards generally accepted by the financial community, such as actual and potential sales, earnings, cash flow and book value. If the Board of Directors of the Company is not able to independently determine that the target business meets such fair market value requirement, the Company will obtain an opinion from an unaffiliated, independent investment banking firm, or another independent entity that commonly renders valuation opinions on the type of Target Business the Company is seeking to acquire. The Company is not required to obtain such an opinion as to the fair market value if the Company's Board of Directors independently determines that the Target Business does have sufficient fair market value.

8 . Representations and Agreements to Survive Delivery. Except as the context otherwise requires, all representations, warranties and agreements contained in this Agreement shall be deemed to be representations, warranties and agreements at the Closing Date or Option Closing Date, as applicable, and such representations, warranties and agreements of the Underwriters and Company, including the indemnity agreements contained in Section 5 hereof, shall remain operative and in full force and effect regardless of any investigation made by or on behalf of any Underwriter, the Company or any controlling person, and shall survive termination of this Agreement or the issuance and delivery of the Public Securities to the several Underwriters until the earlier of the expiration of any applicable statute of limitations and the seventh (7th) anniversary of the Closing Date, at which time the representations, warranties and agreements shall terminate and be of no further force and effect.

9. Effective Date of This Agreement and Termination Thereof.

9.1. Effective Date. This Agreement shall become effective on the Effective Date at the time the Registration Statement is declared effective by the Commission.

9.2. Termination. The Representative shall have the right to terminate this Agreement at any time prior to any Closing Date: (i) if any domestic or international event or act or occurrence has materially disrupted or, in the Representative's sole opinion, will in the immediate future materially disrupt, general securities markets in the United States; or (ii) if trading on the New York Stock Exchange, the NYSE MKT LLC, NASDAQ or on the OTC Bulletin Board (or successor trading market) shall have been suspended, or minimum or maximum prices for trading shall have been fixed, or maximum ranges for prices for securities shall have been fixed, or maximum ranges for prices for securities shall have been required on the OTC Bulletin Board or by order of the Commission or any other government authority having jurisdiction, or (iii) if the United States shall have become involved in a war or an increase in existing major hostilities, or (iv) if a banking moratorium has been declared by a New York State or federal authority, or (v) if a moratorium on foreign exchange trading has been declared which materially adversely impacts the United States securities market, or (vi) if the Company shall have sustained a material loss by fire, flood, accident, hurricane, earthquake, theft, sabotage or other calamity or malicious act which, whether or not such loss shall have been insured, will, in the Representative's sole opinion, make it inadvisable to proceed with the delivery of the Common Stock, (vii) if any of the Company's representations, warranties or covenants hereunder are breached, or (viii) if the Representative shall have become aware after the date hereof of a Material Adverse Effect on the Company, or such adverse material change in general market conditions, including, without limitation, as a result of terrorist activities after the date hereof, as in the Representative's sole judgment would make it impracticable to proceed with the offering, sale and/or delivery of the Common Stock or to enforce contracts made by the Underwriters for the sale of the Common Stock.

9.3. Expenses. In the event that this Agreement shall not be carried out for any reason whatsoever, within the time specified herein or any extensions thereof pursuant to the terms herein, the obligations of the Company to pay the out of pocket expenses related to the transactions contemplated herein shall be governed by Section 3.12 hereof.

9.4. Indemnification. Notwithstanding any contrary provision contained in this Agreement, any election hereunder or any termination of this Agreement, and whether or not this Agreement is otherwise carried out, the provisions of Section 5 shall not be in any way effected by, such election or termination or failure to carry out the terms of this Agreement or any part hereof.

10. Miscellaneous.

10.1. Notices. All communications hereunder, except as herein otherwise specifically provided, shall be in writing and shall be mailed by certified mail (with return receipt), delivered by hand or reputable overnight courier, delivered by facsimile transmission (with printed confirmation of receipt) and confirmed, or by electronic transmission via PDF and shall be deemed given when so mailed, delivered, or faxed or transmitted (or if mailed, five days after such mailing):

If to the Representative:

EarlyBirdCapital, Inc.
366 Madison Avenue
New York, New York 10017
Fax No.: (212) 661-4936
Attn: Steven Levine
Email: slevine@ebcap.com

With a copy (which shall not constitute notice) to:

Greenberg Traurig, LLP
Met Life Building
200 Park Avenue
New York, NY 10166
Fax No.: (212) 801-9200
Attn: Alan I. Annex, Esq.
Email: AnnexA@gtlaw.com

If to the Company, to:

Black Ridge Acquisition Corp.
110 North 5th Street
Suite 410
Minneapolis, MN 55403
Attn: Ken DeCubellis, Chief Executive Officer
Email: [_____]

With a copy (which shall not constitute notice) to:

Graubard Miller
405 Lexington Avenue
New York, New York 10174
Fax No.: (212) 818-8881
Attn: David Alan Miller, Esq.
Email: dmiller@graubard.com

10.2. Headings. The headings contained herein are for the sole purpose of convenience of reference, and shall not in any way limit or affect the meaning or interpretation of any of the terms or provisions of this Agreement.

10.3. Amendment. This Agreement may only be amended by a written instrument executed by each of the parties hereto.

10.4. Entire Agreement. This Agreement (together with the other agreements and documents being delivered pursuant to or in connection with this Agreement) constitute the entire agreement of the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof and thereof, and supersede all prior agreements and understandings of the parties, oral and written, with respect to the subject matter hereof.

10.5. Binding Effect. This Agreement shall inure solely to the benefit of and shall be binding upon the Representative, the Underwriters, the Company and the controlling persons, directors and officers referred to in Section 5 hereof, and their respective successors, legal representatives and assigns, and no other person shall have or be construed to have any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under or in respect of or by virtue of this Agreement or any provisions herein contained.

10.6. Governing Law, Venue, etc. This Agreement shall be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to conflict of laws. Each of the Company and the Representative hereby agrees that any action, proceeding or claim against it arising out of, relating in any way to this Agreement shall be brought and enforced in the courts of the State of New York of the United States of America for the Southern District of New York, and irrevocably submits to such jurisdiction, which jurisdiction shall be exclusive. Each of the Company and the Representative hereby waives any objection to such exclusive jurisdiction and that such courts represent an inconvenient forum. Any such process or summons to be served upon the Company or the Representative, respectively, may be served by transmitting a copy thereof by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, postage prepaid, addressed to it at the address set forth in Section 10.1 hereof. Such mailing shall be deemed personal service and shall be legal and binding upon the Company or the Representative, respectively, in any action, proceeding or claim. Each of the Company and the Representative agrees that the prevailing party(ies) in any such action shall be entitled to recover from the other party(ies) all of its reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses relating to such action or proceeding and/or incurred in connection with the preparation therefor.

10.7. Execution in Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts, and by the different parties hereto in separate counterparts, each of which shall be deemed to be an original, but all of which taken together shall constitute one and the same agreement, and shall become effective when one or more counterparts has been signed by each of the parties hereto and delivered to each of the other parties hereto. Delivery of a signed counterpart of this Agreement by fax or email/.pdf transmission shall constitute valid and sufficient delivery thereof.

10.8. Waiver, etc. The failure of any of the parties hereto to at any time enforce any of the provisions of this Agreement shall not be deemed or construed to be a waiver of any such provision, nor to in any way affect the validity of this Agreement or any provision hereof or the right of any of the parties hereto to thereafter enforce each and every provision of this Agreement. No waiver of any breach, non-compliance or non-fulfillment of any of the provisions of this Agreement shall be effective unless set forth in a written instrument executed by the party or parties against whom or which enforcement of such waiver is sought; and no waiver of any such breach, non-compliance or non-fulfillment shall be construed or deemed to be a waiver of any other or subsequent breach, non-compliance or non-fulfillment.

10.9. No Fiduciary Relationship. The Company hereby acknowledges that the Underwriters are acting solely as underwriters in connection with the offering of the Public Securities. The Company further acknowledges that the Underwriters are acting pursuant to a contractual relationship created solely by this Agreement entered into on an arm's length basis and in no event do the parties intend that the Underwriters act or be responsible as a fiduciary to the Company, its management, stockholders, creditors or any other person in connection with any activity that the Underwriters may undertake or have undertaken in furtherance of the offering of the Public Securities, either before or after the date hereof. The Underwriters hereby expressly disclaim any fiduciary or similar obligations to the Company, either in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or any matters leading up to such transactions, and the Company hereby confirms its understanding and agreement to that effect. The Company and the Underwriters agree that they are each responsible for making their own independent judgments with respect to any such transactions, and that any opinions or views expressed by the Underwriters to the Company regarding such transactions, including but not limited to any opinions or views with respect to the price or market for the Public Securities, do not constitute advice or recommendations to the Company. The Company hereby waives and releases, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any claims that the Company may have against the Underwriters with respect to any breach or alleged breach of any fiduciary or similar duty to the Company in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or any matters leading up to such transactions.

[Signature Page Follows]

If the foregoing correctly sets forth the understanding between the Underwriters and the Company, please so indicate in the space provided below for that purpose, whereupon this letter shall constitute a binding agreement between us.

Very Truly Yours,

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.

By: _____
Name:
Title:

**Agreed to and accepted
as of the date first written above:**

EARLYBIRDCAPITAL, INC., as Representative of the several Underwriters

By: _____
Name:
Title:

[Signature Page to Underwriting Agreement, dated [____], 2017]

SCHEDULE A

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.

10,000,000 Units

Underwriter	Number of Firm Units to be Purchased
EarlyBirdCapital, Inc.	
TOTAL	10,000,000

SCHEDULE B

Investor Presentation dated August 2017

EXHIBIT A

Form of Target Business Letter

Black Ridge Acquisition Corp.
110 North 5th Street
Suite 410
Minneapolis, MN 55403

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Reference is made to the Final Prospectus of Black Ridge Acquisition Corp. (the “**Company**”), dated [____], 2017 (the “**Prospectus**”). Capitalized terms used and not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings assigned to them in the Prospectus.

We have read the Prospectus and understand that the Company has established the Trust Account, initially in an amount of at least \$100,500,000, for the benefit of the Public Stockholders and that, except for the interest earned on the amounts held in the Trust Account, the Company may disburse monies from the Trust Account only: (i) to the Public Stockholders in the event of the conversion of their shares upon consummation of a Business Combination or upon an amendment to the Company’s Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation as described in the Prospectus, (ii) to the Company in limited amounts for its income and other tax obligations, (iii) to the Public Stockholders in connection with the Company’s liquidation in the event the Company is unable to consummate a Business Combination within the required time period or (iv) to the Company concurrently with, or after it consummates a Business Combination.

For and in consideration of the Company agreeing to evaluate the undersigned for purposes of consummating a Business Combination with it, the undersigned hereby agrees that it does not have any right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies in the Trust Account (each, a “**Claim**”) and hereby waives any Claim it may have in the future as a result of, or arising out of, any negotiations, contracts or agreements with the Company and will not seek recourse against the Trust Account for any reason whatsoever.

Print Name of Target Business

Authorized Signature of Target Business

EXHIBIT B

Form of Vendor Letter

Black Ridge Acquisition Corp.
110 North 5th Street
Suite 410
Minneapolis, MN 55403

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Reference is made to the Final Prospectus of Black Ridge Acquisition Corp. (the “**Company**”), dated [____], 2017 (the “**Prospectus**”). Capitalized terms used and not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings assigned to them in the Prospectus.

We have read the Prospectus and understand that the Company has established the Trust Account, initially in an amount of at least \$100,500,000, for the benefit of the Public Stockholders and that, except for the interest earned on the amounts held in the Trust Account, the Company may disburse monies from the Trust Account only: (i) to the Public Stockholders in the event of the conversion of their shares upon consummation of a Business Combination or upon an amendment to the Company’s Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation as described in the Prospectus, (ii) to the Company in limited amounts for its income and other tax obligations, (iii) to the Public Stockholders in connection with the Company’s liquidation in the event the Company is unable to consummate a Business Combination within the required time period or (iv) to the Company concurrently with, or after it consummates a Business Combination.

For and in consideration of the Company agreeing to use the services of the undersigned, the undersigned hereby agrees that it does not have any right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies in the Trust Account (each, a “**Claim**”) and hereby waives any Claim it may have in the future as a result of, or arising out of, any services provided to the Company and will not seek recourse against the Trust Account for any reason whatsoever.

Print Name of Vendor

Authorized Signature of Vendor

EARLYBIRDCAPITAL, INC.
366 Madison Avenue
New York, New York 10017

_____, 2017

Black Ridge Acquisition Corp.
110 North 5th Street
Suite 410
Minneapolis, MN 55403
Attn: Ken DeCubellis, Chief Executive Officer

Ladies and Gentlemen:

This is to confirm our agreement whereby Black Ridge Acquisition Corp., a Delaware corporation (“**Company**”), has requested EarlyBirdCapital, Inc. (the “**Advisor**”) to assist it in connection with the Company merging with, acquiring, engaging in a share exchange, share reconstruction and amalgamation, purchasing all or substantially all of the assets of, entering into contractual arrangements, or engaging in any other similar business combination (in each case, a “**Business Combination**”) with one or more businesses or entities (each a “**Target**”) as described in the Company’s Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-220516) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (“**Registration Statement**”) in connection with its initial public offering (“**IPO**”).

1. Services and Fees.

(a) The Advisor will:

- (i) Hold meetings with Company stockholders to discuss the Business Combination and the Target’s attributes;
 - (ii) Introduce the Company to potential investors to purchase the Company’s securities in connection with the Business Combination;
 - (iii) Assist the Company in trying to obtain stockholder approval for the Business Combination, including assistance with the Company’s proxy statement or tender offer materials; and
-

- (iv) Assist the Company with any press releases and filings related to the Business Combination or the Target.

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, the services to be provided for hereunder will not include any solicitation of potential investors in connection with the IPO.

(b) As compensation for the foregoing services, the Company will pay the Advisor a cash fee equal to 3.5% of the gross proceeds received by the Company in the IPO (“**Fee**”). The Fee is due and payable to the Advisor by wire transfer at the closing of the Business Combination (“**Closing**”). If a proposed Business Combination is not consummated for any reason, no Fee shall be due or payable to the Advisor hereunder. The Fee shall be exclusive of any finder’s fees which may become payable to the Advisor pursuant to any other agreement between the Advisor and the Company or the Target.

2. Expenses.

At the Closing, the Company shall reimburse the Advisor for all reasonable costs and expenses incurred by the Advisor (including reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel) in connection with the performance of its services hereunder; provided, however, all expenses in excess of \$5,000 in the aggregate shall be subject to the Company’s prior written approval, which approval shall not be unreasonably withheld.

3. Company Cooperation.

The Company will provide full cooperation to the Advisor as may be necessary for the efficient performance by the Advisor of its obligations hereunder, including, but not limited to, providing to the Advisor and its counsel, on a timely basis, all documents and information regarding the Company and Target that the Advisor may reasonably request or that are otherwise relevant to the Advisor’s performance of its obligations hereunder (collectively, the “**Information**”); making the Company’s management, auditors, suppliers, customers, consultants and advisors available to the Advisor; and, using commercially reasonable efforts to provide the Advisor with reasonable access to the management, auditors, suppliers, customers, consultants and advisors of Target. The Company will promptly notify the Advisor of any change in facts or circumstances or new developments affecting the Company or Target or that might reasonably be considered material to the Advisor’s engagement hereunder.

4. Representations, Warranties and Covenants.

The Company represents, warrants and covenants to the Advisor that all Information it makes available to the Advisor by or on behalf of the Company in connection with the performance of its obligations hereunder will not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make statements made, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading as of the date thereof and as of the consummation of the Business Combination.

5. Indemnity.

The Company shall indemnify the Advisor and its affiliates and directors, officers, employees, shareholders, representatives and agents in accordance with the indemnification provisions set forth in Annex I hereto, all of which are incorporated herein by reference.

Notwithstanding the foregoing and Annex 1, the Advisor agrees, if there is no Closing, (i) that it does not have any right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies in the Company's trust account ("**Trust Account**") established in connection with the IPO with respect to the Fee (each, a "**Claim**"); (ii) to waive any Claim it may have in the future as a result of, or arising out of, any services provided to the Company hereunder; and (iii) to not seek recourse against the Trust Account with respect to the Fee.

6. Use of Name and Reports.

Without the Advisor's prior written consent, neither the Company nor any of its affiliates (nor any director, officer, manager, partner, member, employee or agent thereof) shall quote or refer to (i) the Advisor's name or (ii) any advice rendered by the Advisor to the Company or any communication from the Advisor in connection with performance of their services hereunder, except as required by applicable federal or state law, regulation or securities exchange rule.

7. Status as Independent Contractor.

The Advisor shall perform its services as an independent contractor and not as an employee of the Company or affiliate thereof. It is expressly understood and agreed to by the parties that the Advisor shall have no authority to act for, represent or bind the Company or any affiliate thereof in any manner, except as may be expressly agreed to by the Company in writing. In rendering such services, the Advisor will be acting solely pursuant to a contractual relationship on an arm's-length basis. This Agreement is not intended to create a fiduciary relationship between the parties and neither the Advisor nor any of the Advisor's officers, directors or personnel will owe any fiduciary duty to the Company or any other person in connection with any of the matters contemplated by this Agreement.

8. Potential Conflicts.

The Company acknowledges that the Advisor is a full-service securities firm engaged in securities trading and brokerage activities and providing investment banking and advisory services from which conflicting interests may arise. In the ordinary course of business, the Advisor and its affiliates may at any time hold long or short positions, and may trade or otherwise effect transactions, for their own account or the accounts of customers, in debt or equity securities of the Company, its affiliates or other entities that may be involved in the transactions contemplated hereby. Nothing in this Agreement shall be construed to limit or restrict the Advisor or any of its affiliates in conducting such business.

9. Entire Agreement.

This Agreement constitutes the entire understanding between the parties with respect to the subject matter hereof and supersedes all prior agreements and understandings, oral or written, with respect thereto. This Agreement may not be modified or terminated orally or in any manner other than by an agreement in writing signed by the parties hereto.

10. Notices.

Any notices required or permitted to be given hereunder shall be in writing and shall be deemed given when mailed by certified mail or private courier service, return receipt requested, addressed to each party at its respective addresses set forth above, or such other address as may be given by a party in a notice given pursuant to this Section.

11. Successors and Assigns.

This Agreement may not be assigned by either party without the written consent of the other. This Agreement shall be binding upon and shall inure to the benefit of the parties hereto and, except where prohibited, to their successors and assigns.

12. Non-Exclusivity.

Nothing herein shall be deemed to restrict or prohibit the engagement by the Company of other consultants providing the same or similar services or the payment by the Company of fees to such parties. The Company's engagement of any other consultant(s) shall not affect the Advisor's right to receive the Fee and reimbursement of expenses pursuant to this Agreement.

13. Applicable Law; Venue.

This Agreement shall be construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of New York without giving effect to conflict of laws.

In the event of any dispute under this Agreement, then and in such event, each party hereto agrees that the dispute shall be brought and enforced in the courts of the State of New York, County of New York under the accelerated adjudication procedures of the Commercial Division, or the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, in each event at the discretion of the party initiating the dispute. Each party irrevocably submits to such jurisdiction, which jurisdiction shall be exclusive. Each party hereby waives any objection to such exclusive jurisdiction and that such courts represent an inconvenient forum. Any such process or summons to be served upon a party may be served by transmitting a copy thereof by registered or certified mail, postage prepaid, addressed to such party at the address set forth at the beginning of this Agreement. Such mailing shall be deemed personal service and shall be legal and binding upon the party being served in any action, proceeding or claim. The parties agree that the prevailing party(ies) in any such action shall be entitled to recover from the other party(ies) all of its reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses relating to such action or proceeding and/or incurred in connection with the preparation therefor.

14. Counterparts.

This Agreement may be executed in several original or facsimile counterparts, each one of which shall constitute an original, and together shall constitute but one instrument.

If the foregoing correctly sets forth the understanding between the Advisor and the Company with respect to the foregoing, please so indicate your agreement by signing in the place provided below, at which time this letter shall become a binding contract.

EARLYBIRDCAPITAL, INC.

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

AGREED AND ACCEPTED BY:

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

[Signature Page to Business Combination Marketing Agreement]

Indemnification

In connection with the Company's engagement of EarlyBirdCapital, Inc. (the "**Advisor**") pursuant to that certain letter agreement ("**Agreement**") of which this Annex forms a part, Black Ridge Acquisition Corp. (the "**Company**") hereby agrees, subject to the second paragraph of Section 5 of the Agreement, to indemnify and hold harmless the Advisor and its affiliates and its respective directors, officers, shareholders, agents and employees of any of the foregoing (collectively the "**Indemnified Persons**"), from and against any and all claims, actions, suits, proceedings (including those of stockholders), damages, liabilities and expenses incurred by any of them (including the reasonable fees and expenses of counsel), as incurred, (collectively a "**Claim**"), that (A) are related to or arise out of (i) any actions taken or omitted to be taken (including any untrue statements made or any statements omitted to be made) by the Company, or (ii) any actions taken or omitted to be taken by any Indemnified Person in connection with the Company's engagement of the Advisor, or (B) otherwise relate to or arise out of the Advisor's activities on the Company's behalf under the Advisor's engagement, and the Company shall reimburse any Indemnified Person for all expenses (including the reasonable fees and expenses of counsel) as incurred by such Indemnified Person in connection with investigating, preparing or defending any such claim, action, suit or proceeding, whether or not in connection with pending or threatened litigation in which any Indemnified Person is a party. The Company will not, however, be responsible for any Claim that is finally judicially determined to have resulted from the gross negligence or willful misconduct of any person seeking indemnification for such Claim. The Company further agrees that no Indemnified Person shall have any liability to the Company for or in connection with the Company's engagement of the Advisor except for any Claim incurred by the Company as a result of such Indemnified Person's gross negligence or willful misconduct.

The Company further agrees that it will not, without the prior written consent of the Advisor, settle, compromise or consent to the entry of any judgment in any pending or threatened Claim in respect of which indemnification may be sought hereunder (whether or not any Indemnified Person is an actual or potential party to such Claim), unless such settlement, compromise or consent includes an unconditional, irrevocable release of each Indemnified Person from any and all liability arising out of such Claim.

Promptly upon receipt by an Indemnified Person of notice of any complaint or the assertion or institution of any Claim with respect to which indemnification is being sought hereunder, such Indemnified Person shall notify the Company in writing of such complaint or of such assertion or institution but failure to so notify the Company shall not relieve the Company from any obligation it may have hereunder, except and only to the extent such failure results in the forfeiture by the Company of substantial rights and defenses. If the Company so elects or is requested by such Indemnified Person, the Company will assume the defense of such Claim, including the employment of counsel reasonably satisfactory to such Indemnified Person and the payment of the fees and expenses of such counsel. In the event, however, that legal counsel to such Indemnified Person reasonably determines that having common counsel would present such counsel with a conflict of interest or if the defendant in, or target of, any such Claim, includes an Indemnified Person and the Company, and legal counsel to such Indemnified Person reasonably concludes that there may be legal defenses available to it or other Indemnified Persons different from or in addition to those available to the Company, then such Indemnified Person may employ its own separate counsel to represent or defend him, her or it in any such Claim and the Company shall pay the reasonable fees and expenses of such counsel. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, if the Company fails timely or diligently to defend, contest, or otherwise protect against any Claim, the relevant Indemnified Party shall have the right, but not the obligation, to defend, contest, compromise, settle, assert crossclaims, or counterclaims or otherwise protect against the same, and shall be fully indemnified by the Company therefor, including without limitation, for the reasonable fees and expenses of its counsel and all amounts paid as a result of such Claim or the compromise or settlement thereof.

In addition, with respect to any Claim in which the Company assumes the defense, the Indemnified Person shall have the right to participate in such Claim and to retain his, her or its own counsel therefor at his, her or its own expense.

The Company agrees that if any indemnity sought by an Indemnified Person hereunder is held by a court to be unavailable for any reason then (whether or not the Advisor is an Indemnified Person), the Company and the Advisor shall contribute to the Claim for which such indemnity is held unavailable in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative benefits to the Company, on the one hand, and the Advisor on the other, in connection with the Advisor's engagement referred to above, subject to the limitation that in no event shall the amount of the Advisor's contribution to such Claim exceed the amount of fees actually received by the Advisor from the Company pursuant to the Advisor's engagement. The Company hereby agrees that the relative benefits to the Company, on the one hand, and the Advisor on the other, with respect to the Advisor's engagement shall be deemed to be in the same proportion as (a) the total value paid or proposed to be paid or received by the Company or its stockholders as the case may be, pursuant to the transaction (whether or not consummated) for which the Advisor is engaged to render services bears to (b) the fee paid or proposed to be paid to the Advisor in connection with such engagement.

The Company's indemnity, reimbursement and contribution obligations under this Agreement (a) shall be in addition to, and shall in no way limit or otherwise adversely affect any rights that any Indemnified Party may have at law or at equity and (b) shall be effective whether or not the Company is at fault in any way.

THE REGISTERED HOLDER OF THIS PURCHASE OPTION BY ITS ACCEPTANCE HEREOF, AGREES THAT IT WILL NOT SELL, TRANSFER OR ASSIGN THIS PURCHASE OPTION EXCEPT AS HEREIN PROVIDED AND THE REGISTERED HOLDER OF THIS PURCHASE OPTION AGREES THAT IT WILL NOT SELL, TRANSFER, ASSIGN, PLEDGE OR HYPOTHECATE THIS PURCHASE OPTION FOR A PERIOD OF 180 DAYS FOLLOWING THE EFFECTIVE DATE (DEFINED BELOW) TO ANYONE OTHER THAN (I) EARLYBIRDCAPITAL, INC. ("**EBC**") OR AN UNDERWRITER OR SELECTED DEALER IN CONNECTION WITH THE OFFERING, OR (II) A BONA FIDE OFFICER OR PARTNER OF EBC OR OF ANY SUCH UNDERWRITER OR SELECTED DEALER, EXCEPT IN ACCORDANCE WITH FINRA RULE 5110(G)(2). ADDITIONALLY, PURSUANT TO FINRA CONDUCT RULE 5110(G), THE PURCHASE OPTION (OR THE COMMON STOCK, RIGHTS AND WARRANTS UNDERLYING THIS PURCHASE OPTION) WILL NOT BE THE SUBJECT OF ANY HEDGING, SHORT SALE, DERIVATIVE, PUT OR CALL TRANSACTION THAT WOULD RESULT IN THE ECONOMIC DISPOSITION OF THE SECURITIES BY ANY PERSON FOR A PERIOD OF 180 DAYS IMMEDIATELY FOLLOWING THE EFFECTIVE DATE.

THIS PURCHASE OPTION IS NOT EXERCISABLE PRIOR TO THE LATER OF THE CONSUMMATION BY BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP. ("**COMPANY**") OF A MERGER, SHARE EXCHANGE, ASSET ACQUISITION, SHARE PURCHASE, RECAPITALIZATION, REORGANIZATION OR OTHER SIMILAR BUSINESS COMBINATION WITH ONE OR MORE BUSINESSES OR ENTITIES ("**BUSINESS COMBINATION**") (AS DESCRIBED MORE FULLY IN THE COMPANY'S REGISTRATION STATEMENT (DEFINED HEREIN)) AND _____, 2018. VOID AFTER 5:00 P.M. NEW YORK CITY LOCAL TIME, ON THE EXPIRATION DATE (DEFINED HEREIN).

UNIT PURCHASE OPTION

FOR THE PURCHASE OF

_____ **UNITS**

OF

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.

1. Purchase Option.

THIS CERTIFIES THAT, in consideration of \$___ duly paid by or on behalf of _____ ("**Holder**"), as registered owner of this Purchase Option, to Black Ridge Acquisition Corp. ("**Company**"), Holder is entitled, at any time or from time to time upon the later of the consummation of a Business Combination or _____, 2018 ("**Commencement Date**"), and at or before 5:00 p.m., New York City local time, on the five year anniversary of the effective date ("**Effective Date**") of the Company's registration statement ("**Registration Statement**") pursuant to which Units are offered for sale to the public ("**Offering**"), but not thereafter ("**Expiration Date**"), to subscribe for, purchase and receive, in whole or in part, up to _____ (_____) units ("**Units**") of the Company, each Unit consisting of one share of common stock of the Company, par value \$0.0001 per share ("**Common Stock**"), one right ("**Right(s)**") entitling the Holder to receive one tenth (1/10) of a share of Common Stock upon consummation of a Business Combination, and one warrant ("**Warrant(s)**"), each warrant to purchase one share of Common Stock. Each Right is the same as the right included in the Units being registered for sale to the public by way of the Registration Statement. Each Warrant is the same as the warrant included in the Units being registered for sale to the public by way of the Registration Statement ("**Public Warrants**"). If the Expiration Date is a day on which banking institutions are authorized by law to close, then this Purchase Option may be exercised on the next succeeding day which is not such a day in accordance with the terms herein. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary, neither this Purchase Option nor the Warrants underlying this Purchase Option may be exercisable after the five year anniversary of the Effective Date. During the period ending on the Expiration Date, the Company agrees not to take any action that would terminate the Purchase Option. This Purchase Option is initially exercisable at \$11.50 per Unit so purchased; provided, however, that upon the occurrence of any of the events specified in Section 6 hereof, the rights granted by this Purchase Option, including the exercise price per Unit and the number of Units (and shares of Common Stock, Rights and Warrants) to be received upon such exercise, shall be adjusted as therein specified. The term "**Exercise Price**" shall mean the initial exercise price or the adjusted exercise price, depending on the context.

2. Exercise.

2.1 Exercise Form. In order to exercise this Purchase Option, the exercise form attached hereto must be duly executed and completed and delivered to the Company, together with this Purchase Option and payment of the Exercise Price for the Units being purchased payable in cash or by certified check or official bank check. If the subscription rights represented hereby shall not be exercised at or before 5:00 p.m., New York City local time, on the Expiration Date this Purchase Option shall become and be void without further force or effect, and all rights represented hereby shall cease and expire.

2.2 Legend. Each certificate for the securities purchased under this Purchase Option shall bear a legend as follows unless such securities have been registered under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (“Act”):

“The securities represented by this certificate have not been registered under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (“Act”) or applicable state law. The securities may not be offered for sale, sold or otherwise transferred except pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Act, or pursuant to an exemption from registration under the Act and applicable state law.”

2.3 Cashless Exercise.

2.3.1 Determination of Amount. In lieu of the payment of the Exercise Price multiplied by the number of Units for which this Purchase Option is exercisable (and in lieu of being entitled to receive shares of Common Stock and Warrants) in the manner required by Section 2.1, and subject to Section 6.1 hereof, the Holder shall have the right (but not the obligation) to convert any exercisable but unexercised portion of this Purchase Option into Units (“Cashless Exercise Right”) as follows: upon exercise of the Cashless Exercise Right, the Company shall deliver to the Holder (without payment by the Holder of any of the Exercise Price in cash) that number of Units (or that number of shares of Common Stock, Rights and Warrants comprising that number of Units) equal to the number of Units to be exercised multiplied by the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the “Value” (as defined below) of the portion of the Purchase Option being exercised by (y) the Current Market Value (as defined below). The “Value” of the portion of the Purchase Option being exercised shall equal the remainder derived from subtracting (a) (i) the Exercise Price multiplied by (ii) the number of Units underlying the portion of this Purchase Option being exercised from (b) the Current Market Value of a Unit multiplied by the number of Units underlying the portion of the Purchase Option being exercised. As used herein, the term “Current Market Value” per Unit at any date means: (A) in the event that the Units, Common Stock and Public Warrants are still trading, (i) if the Units are listed on a national securities exchange or quoted on the OTC Bulletin Board (or successor exchange), the average reported last sale price of the Units in the principal trading market for the Units as reported by the exchange, Nasdaq or the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (“FINRA”), as the case may be, for the three trading days preceding the date in question; or (ii) if the Units are not listed on a national securities exchange or quoted on the OTC Bulletin Board (or successor exchange), but is traded in the residual over-the-counter market, the average reported last sale price for Units for the three trading days preceding the date in question for which such quotations are reported by the Pink Sheets, LLC or similar publisher of such quotations; (B) in the event that the Units are not still trading but the Common Stock and Public Warrants underlying the Units are still trading, the aggregate of (i) the product of (x) the Current Market Price of the Common Stock and (y) the number of shares of Common Stock underlying one Unit (which shall include the portion of a share of Common Stock the holder of a Unit would automatically receive in connection with the Right included in each such Unit) plus (ii) the product of (x) the Current Market Price of the Public Warrants and (y) the number of the Warrants included in one Unit; or (C) in the event that neither the Units nor Public Warrants are still trading, the aggregate of (i) the product of (x) the Current Market Price of the Common Stock and (y) the number of shares of Common Stock underlying one Unit (which shall include the portion of a share of Common Stock the holder of a Unit would automatically receive in connection with the Right included in each such Unit) plus (ii) the remainder derived from subtracting (x) the exercise price of the Warrants multiplied by the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants underlying one Unit from (y) the product of (aa) the Current Market Price of the Common Stock multiplied by (bb) the number of shares of Common Stock underlying the Warrants included in each such Unit. The “Current Market Price” shall mean (i) if the Common Stock (or Public Warrants, as the case may be) is listed on a national securities exchange or quoted on the OTC Bulletin Board (or successor exchange), the average reported last sale price of the Common Stock (or Public Warrants) in the principal trading market for the Common Stock (or Public Warrants) as reported by the exchange, Nasdaq or FINRA, as the case may be, for the three trading days preceding the date in question; (ii) if the Common Stock (or Public Warrants, as the case may be) is not listed on a national securities exchange or quoted on the OTC Bulletin Board (or successor exchange), but is traded in the residual over-the-counter market, the average reported last sale price for the Common Stock (or Public Warrants) on for the three trading days preceding the date in question for which such quotations are reported by the Pink Sheets, LLC or similar publisher of such quotations; and (iii) if the fair market value of the Common Stock cannot be determined pursuant to clause (i) or (ii) above, such price as the Board of Directors of the Company shall determine, in good faith. In the event the Public Warrants have expired and are no longer exercisable, no “Value” shall be attributed to the Warrants underlying this Purchase Option or Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrant.

2.3.2 Mechanics of Cashless Exercise. The Cashless Exercise Right may be exercised by the Holder on any business day on or after the Commencement Date and not later than the Expiration Date by delivering the Purchase Option with the duly executed exercise form attached hereto with the cashless exercise section completed to the Company, exercising the Cashless Exercise Right and specifying the total number of Units the Holder will purchase pursuant to such Cashless Exercise Right.

2.4 No Obligation to Net Cash Settle. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Purchase Option, in no event will the Company be required to net cash settle the exercise of the Purchase Option or the Rights and Warrants underlying the Purchase Option. The holder of the Purchase Option and the Warrants underlying the Purchase Option will not be entitled to exercise the Purchase Option or the Warrants underlying such Purchase Option unless it exercises such Purchase Option pursuant to the Cashless Exercise Right or a registration statement is effective, or an exemption from the registration requirements is available at such time and, if the holder is not able to exercise the Purchase Option or underlying Warrants, the Purchase Option and/or the underlying Warrants, as applicable, will expire worthless.

3. **Transfer.**

3.1 General Restrictions. The registered Holder of this Purchase Option, by its acceptance hereof, agrees that it will not sell, transfer, assign, pledge or hypothecate this Purchase Option (or the Common Stock, Rights and Warrants underlying this Purchase Option) for a period of 180 days pursuant to FINRA Conduct Rule 5110(g)(1) following the Effective Date to anyone other than (i) EBC or an underwriter or selected dealer in connection with the Offering, or (ii) a bona fide officer or partner of EBC or of any such underwriter or selected dealer. Additionally, pursuant to FINRA Conduct Rule 5110(g), the Purchase Option (or the Common Stock, Rights and Warrants underlying this Purchase Option) will not be the subject of any hedging, short sale, derivative, put or call transaction that would result in the economic disposition of the securities by any person for a period of 180 days immediately following the Effective Date. On and after the 181st day following the Effective Date, transfers to others may be made subject to compliance with or exemptions from applicable securities laws. In order to make any permitted assignment, the Holder must deliver to the Company the assignment form attached hereto duly executed and completed, together with the Purchase Option and payment of all transfer taxes, if any, payable in connection therewith. The Company shall within five business days transfer this Purchase Option on the books of the Company and shall execute and deliver a new Purchase Option or Purchase Options of like tenor to the appropriate assignee(s) expressly evidencing the right to purchase the aggregate number of Units purchasable hereunder or such portion of such number as shall be contemplated by any such assignment.

3.2 Restrictions Imposed by the Act. The securities evidenced by this Purchase Option shall not be transferred unless and until (i) the Company has received the opinion of counsel for the Holder that the securities may be transferred pursuant to an exemption from registration under the Act and applicable state securities laws, the availability of which is established to the reasonable satisfaction of the Company (the Company hereby agreeing that the opinion of Graubard Miller shall be deemed satisfactory evidence of the availability of an exemption), or (ii) a registration statement or a post-effective amendment to the Registration Statement relating to such securities has been filed by the Company and declared effective by the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Commission") and compliance with applicable state securities law has been established.

4. **New Purchase Options to be Issued.**

4.1 **Partial Exercise or Transfer.** Subject to the restrictions in Section 3 hereof, this Purchase Option may be exercised or assigned in whole or in part. In the event of the exercise or assignment hereof in part only, upon surrender of this Purchase Option for cancellation, together with the duly executed exercise or assignment form and funds sufficient to pay any Exercise Price (except to the extent that the Holder elects to exercise this Purchase Option by means of a cashless exercise as provided in Section 2.3 above) and/or transfer tax, the Company shall cause to be delivered to the Holder without charge a new Purchase Option of like tenor to this Purchase Option in the name of the Holder evidencing the right of the Holder to purchase the number of Units purchasable hereunder as to which this Purchase Option has not been exercised or assigned.

4.2 **Lost Certificate.** Upon receipt by the Company of evidence satisfactory to it of the loss, theft, destruction or mutilation of this Purchase Option and of reasonably satisfactory indemnification or the posting of a bond, the Company shall execute and deliver a new Purchase Option of like tenor and date. Any such new Purchase Option executed and delivered as a result of such loss, theft, mutilation or destruction shall constitute a substitute contractual obligation on the part of the Company.

5. **Registration Rights.**

5.1 **Demand Registration.**

5.1.1 **Grant of Right.** The Company, upon written demand ("**Initial Demand Notice**") of the Holder(s) of at least 51% of the Purchase Options and/or the underlying Units and/or the underlying securities ("**Majority Holders**"), agrees to use its best efforts to register (the "**Demand Registration**") under the Act on one occasion, all or any portion of the Purchase Options requested by the Majority Holders in the Initial Demand Notice and all of the securities underlying such Purchase Options, including the Units, Common Stock, the Warrants and the Common Stock underlying the Rights and Warrants (collectively, the "**Registrable Securities**"). On such occasion, the Company will use its best efforts to file a registration statement or a post-effective amendment to the Registration Statement covering the Registrable Securities within sixty days after receipt of the Initial Demand Notice and use its best efforts to have such registration statement or post-effective amendment declared effective as soon as possible thereafter. The demand for registration may be made at any time during a period of five years beginning on the Effective Date. The Initial Demand Notice shall specify the number of shares of Registrable Securities proposed to be sold and the intended method(s) of distribution thereof. The Company will notify all holders of the Purchase Options and/or Registrable Securities of the demand within ten days from the date of the receipt of any such Initial Demand Notice. Each holder of Registrable Securities who wishes to include all or a portion of such holder's Registrable Securities in the Demand Registration (each such holder including shares of Registrable Securities in such registration, a "**Demanding Holder**") shall so notify the Company within fifteen (15) days after the receipt by the holder of the notice from the Company. Upon any such request, the Demanding Holders shall be entitled to have their Registrable Securities included in the Demand Registration, subject to Section 5.1.4. The Company shall not be obligated to effect more than one (1) Demand Registration under this Section 5.1 in respect of all Registrable Securities.

5.1.2 **Effective Registration.** A registration will not count as a Demand Registration until the registration statement filed with the Commission with respect to such Demand Registration has been declared effective and the Company has complied with all of its obligations under this Agreement with respect thereto.

5.1.3 **Underwritten Offering.** If the Majority Holders so elect and such holders so advise the Company as part of the Initial Demand Notice, the offering of such Registrable Securities pursuant to such Demand Registration shall be in the form of an underwritten offering. In such event, the right of any holder to include its Registrable Securities in such registration shall be conditioned upon such holder's participation in such underwriting and the inclusion of such holder's Registrable Securities in the underwriting to the extent provided herein. All Demanding Holders proposing to distribute their securities through such underwriting shall enter into an underwriting agreement in customary form with the underwriter or underwriters selected for such underwriting by the Majority Holders.

5.1.4 **Reduction of Offering.** If the managing underwriter or underwriters for a Demand Registration that is to be an underwritten offering advises the Company and the Demanding Holders in writing that the dollar amount or number of shares of Registrable Securities which the Demanding Holders desire to sell, taken together with all other Common Stock or other securities which the Company desires to sell and the Common Stock, if any, as to which registration has been requested pursuant to written contractual piggy-back registration rights held by other stockholders of the Company who desire to sell, exceeds the maximum dollar amount or maximum number of shares that can be sold in such offering without adversely affecting the proposed offering price, the timing, the distribution method, or the probability of success of such offering (such maximum dollar amount or maximum number of shares, as applicable, the “**Maximum Number of Shares**”), then the Company shall include in such registration: (i) first, the Registrable Securities as to which Demand Registration has been requested by the Demanding Holders (pro rata in accordance with the number of shares that each such Person has requested be included in such registration, regardless of the number of shares held by each such Person (such proportion is referred to herein as “**Pro Rata**”)) that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Shares; (ii) second, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Shares has not been reached under the foregoing clause (i), the Common Stock or other securities that the Company desires to sell that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Shares; (iii) third, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Shares has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (i) and (ii), the Common Stock or other securities registrable pursuant to the terms of the Registration Rights Agreement between the Company and the initial investors in the Company, dated as of _____, 2017 (the “**Registration Rights Agreement**” and such registrable securities, the “**Investor Securities**”) as to which “piggy-back” registration has been requested by the holders thereof, Pro Rata, that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Shares; and (iv) fourth, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Shares have not been reached under the foregoing clauses (i), (ii), and (iii), the Common Stock or other securities for the account of other persons that the Company is obligated to register pursuant to written contractual arrangements with such persons and that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Shares.

5.1.5 **Withdrawal.** If a majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders disapprove of the terms of any underwriting or are not entitled to include all of their Registrable Securities in any offering, such majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders may elect to withdraw from such offering by giving written notice to the Company and the underwriter or underwriters of their request to withdraw prior to the effectiveness of the registration statement filed with the Commission with respect to such Demand Registration. If the majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders withdraws from a proposed offering relating to a Demand Registration, then the Company does not have to continue its obligations under Section 5.1 with respect to such proposed offering.

5.1.6 **Terms.** The Company shall bear all fees and expenses attendant to registering the Registrable Securities, including the expenses of any legal counsel selected by the Holders to represent them in connection with the sale of the Registrable Securities, but the Holders shall pay any and all underwriting commissions. The Company agrees to use its reasonable best efforts to qualify or register the Registrable Securities in such states as are reasonably requested by the Majority Holder(s); provided, however, that in no event shall the Company be required to register the Registrable Securities in a state in which such registration would cause (i) the Company to be obligated to qualify to do business in such state, or would subject the Company to taxation as a foreign corporation doing business in such jurisdiction or (ii) the principal stockholders of the Company to be obligated to escrow their shares of Common Stock of the Company. The Company shall use its best efforts to cause any registration statement or post-effective amendment filed pursuant to the demand rights granted under Section 5.1.1 to remain effective for a period of nine consecutive months from the effective date of such registration statement or post-effective amendment.

5.2 Piggy-Back Registration.

5.2.1 Piggy-Back Rights. If at any time during the seven year period commencing on the Effective Date the Company proposes to file a registration statement under the Act with respect to an offering of equity securities, or securities or other obligations exercisable or exchangeable for, or convertible into, equity securities, by the Company for its own account or for stockholders of the Company for their account (or by the Company and by stockholders of the Company including, without limitation, pursuant to Section 5.1), other than a registration statement (i) filed in connection with any employee share option or other benefit plan, (ii) for an exchange offer or offering of securities solely to the Company's existing stockholders, (iii) for an offering of debt that is convertible into equity securities of the Company or (iv) for a dividend reinvestment plan, then the Company shall (x) give written notice of such proposed filing to the holders of Registrable Securities as soon as practicable but in no event less than ten (10) days before the anticipated filing date, which notice shall describe the amount and type of securities to be included in such offering, the intended method(s) of distribution, and the name of the proposed managing underwriter or underwriters, if any, of the offering, and (y) offer to the holders of Registrable Securities in such notice the opportunity to register the sale of such number of shares of Registrable Securities as such holders may request in writing within five (5) days following receipt of such notice (a "**Piggy-Back Registration**"). The Company shall cause such Registrable Securities to be included in such registration and shall use its best efforts to cause the managing underwriter or underwriters of a proposed underwritten offering to permit the Registrable Securities requested to be included in a Piggy-Back Registration on the same terms and conditions as any similar securities of the Company and to permit the sale or other disposition of such Registrable Securities in accordance with the intended method(s) of distribution thereof. All holders of Registrable Securities proposing to distribute their securities through a Piggy-Back Registration that involves an underwriter or underwriters shall enter into an underwriting agreement in customary form with the underwriter or underwriters selected for such Piggy-Back Registration.

5.2.2 Reduction of Offering. If the managing underwriter or underwriters for a Piggy-Back Registration that is to be an underwritten offering advises the Company and the holders of Registrable Securities in writing that the dollar amount or number of shares of Common Stock which the Company desires to sell, taken together with Common Stock, if any, as to which registration has been demanded pursuant to written contractual arrangements with persons other than the holders of Registrable Securities hereunder, the Registrable Securities as to which registration has been requested under this Section 5.2, and the Common Stock, if any, as to which registration has been requested pursuant to the written contractual piggy-back registration rights of other stockholders of the Company, exceeds the Maximum Number of Shares, then the Company shall include in any such registration:

(a) If the registration is undertaken for the Company's account: (A) first, the Common Stock or other securities that the Company desires to sell that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Shares; (B) second, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Shares has not been reached under the foregoing clause (A), the Common Stock or other securities, if any, comprised of Registrable Securities and Investor Securities, as to which registration has been requested pursuant to the applicable written contractual piggy-back registration rights of such security holders, Pro Rata, that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Shares; and (C) third, to the extent that the Maximum Number of shares has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (A) and (B), the Common Stock or other securities for the account of other persons that the Company is obligated to register pursuant to written contractual piggy-back registration rights with such persons and that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Shares;

(b) If the registration is a Demand Registration undertaken at the demand of holders of Investor Securities, (A) first, the Common Stock or other securities for the account of the demanding persons, Pro Rata, that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Shares; (B) second, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Shares has not been reached under the foregoing clause (A), the Common Stock or other securities that the Company desires to sell that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Shares; (C) third, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Shares has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (A) and (B), the shares of Registrable Securities, Pro Rata, as to which registration has been requested pursuant to the terms hereof, that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Shares; and (D) fourth, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Shares has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (A), (B) and (C), the Common Stock or other securities for the account of other persons that the Company is obligated to register pursuant to written contractual arrangements with such persons, that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Shares; and

(c) If the registration is a Demand Registration undertaken at the demand of persons other than either the holders of Registrable Securities or of Investor Securities, (A) first, the Common Stock or other securities for the account of the demanding persons that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Shares; (B) second, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Shares has not been reached under the foregoing clause (A), the Common Stock or other securities that the Company desires to sell that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Shares; (C) third, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Shares has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (A) and (B), collectively the Common Stock or other securities comprised of Registrable Securities and Investor Securities, Pro Rata, as to which registration has been requested pursuant to the terms hereof and of the Registration Rights Agreement, as applicable, that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Shares; and (D) fourth, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Shares has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (A), (B) and (C), the Common Stock or other securities for the account of other persons that the Company is obligated to register pursuant to written contractual arrangements with such persons, that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Shares.

5.2.3 Withdrawal. Any holder of Registrable Securities may elect to withdraw such holder's request for inclusion of Registrable Securities in any Piggy-Back Registration by giving written notice to the Company of such request to withdraw prior to the effectiveness of the registration statement. The Company (whether on its own determination or as the result of a withdrawal by persons making a demand pursuant to written contractual obligations) may withdraw a registration statement at any time prior to the effectiveness of the registration statement. Notwithstanding any such withdrawal, the Company shall pay all expenses incurred by the holders of Registrable Securities in connection with such Piggy-Back Registration as provided in Section 5.2.4.

5.2.4 Terms. The Company shall bear all fees and expenses attendant to registering the Registrable Securities, including the expenses of any legal counsel selected by the Holders to represent them in connection with the sale of the Registrable Securities but the Holders shall pay any and all underwriting commissions related to the Registrable Securities. In the event of such a proposed registration, the Company shall furnish the then Holders of outstanding Registrable Securities with not less than fifteen days written notice prior to the proposed date of filing of such registration statement. Such notice to the Holders shall continue to be given for each applicable registration statement filed (during the period in which the Purchase Option is exercisable) by the Company until such time as all of the Registrable Securities have been registered and sold. The Holders of the Registrable Securities shall exercise the "piggy-back" rights provided for herein by giving written notice, within ten days of the receipt of the Company's notice of its intention to file a registration statement. The Company shall use its best efforts to cause any registration statement filed pursuant to the above "piggyback" rights to remain effective for at least nine months from the date that the Holders of the Registrable Securities are first given the opportunity to sell all of such securities.

5.3 General Terms.

5.3.1 Indemnification. The Company shall, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, indemnify the Holder(s) of the Registrable Securities to be sold pursuant to any registration statement hereunder and each person, if any, who controls such Holders within the meaning of Section 15 of the Act or Section 20(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended ("Exchange Act"), against all loss, claim, damage, expense or liability (including all reasonable attorneys' fees and other expenses reasonably incurred in investigating, preparing or defending against litigation, commenced or threatened, or any claim whatsoever whether arising out of any action between the underwriter and the Company or between the underwriter and any third party or otherwise) to which any of them may become subject under the Act, the Exchange Act or otherwise, arising from such registration statement but only to the same extent and with the same effect as the provisions pursuant to which the Company has agreed to indemnify the underwriters contained in Section 5 of the Underwriting Agreement between the Company, EBC and the other underwriters named therein dated the Effective Date. The Holder(s) of the Registrable Securities to be sold pursuant to such registration statement, and their successors and assigns, shall severally, and not jointly, indemnify the Company, its officers and directors and each person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of Section 15 of the Act or Section 20(a) of the Exchange Act, against all loss, claim, damage, expense or liability (including all reasonable attorneys' fees and other expenses reasonably incurred in investigating, preparing or defending against any claim whatsoever) to which they may become subject under the Act, the Exchange Act or otherwise, arising from information furnished by or on behalf of such Holders, or their successors or assigns, in writing, for specific inclusion in such registration statement to the same extent and with the same effect as the provisions contained in Section 5 of the Underwriting Agreement pursuant to which the underwriters have agreed to indemnify the Company.

5.3.2 Exercise of Purchase Options. Nothing contained in this Purchase Option shall be construed as requiring the Holder(s) to exercise their Purchase Options or Warrants underlying such Purchase Options prior to or after the initial filing of any registration statement or the effectiveness thereof.

5.3.3 Documents Delivered to Holders. The Company shall furnish EBC, as representative of the Holders participating in any of the foregoing offerings, a signed counterpart, addressed to the participating Holders, of (i) an opinion of counsel to the Company, dated the effective date of such registration statement (and, if such registration includes an underwritten public offering, an opinion dated the date of the closing under any underwriting agreement related thereto), and (ii) if such registration statement is filed in connection of an underwritten public offering, a “cold comfort” letter dated the effective date of such registration statement (and, if such registration includes an underwritten public offering, a letter dated the date of the closing under the underwriting agreement) signed by the independent public accountants who have issued a report on the Company’s financial statements included in such registration statement, in each case covering substantially the same matters with respect to such registration statement (and the prospectus included therein) and, in the case of such accountants’ letter, with respect to events subsequent to the date of such financial statements, as are customarily covered in opinions of issuer’s counsel and in accountants’ letters delivered to underwriters in underwritten public offerings of securities. The Company shall also deliver promptly to EBC, as representative of the Holders participating in the offering, the correspondence and memoranda described below and copies of all correspondence between the Commission and the Company, its counsel or auditors and all memoranda relating to discussions with the Commission or its staff with respect to the registration statement and permit EBC, as representative of the Holders, to do such investigation, upon reasonable advance notice, with respect to information contained in or omitted from the registration statement as it deems reasonably necessary to comply with applicable securities laws or rules of FINRA. Such investigation shall include access to books, records and properties and opportunities to discuss the business of the Company with its officers and independent auditors, all to such reasonable extent and at such reasonable times and as often as EBC, as representative of the Holders, shall reasonably request. The Company shall not be required to disclose any confidential information or other records to EBC, as representative of the Holders, or to any other person, until and unless such persons shall have entered into reasonable confidentiality agreements (in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Company), with the Company with respect thereto.

5.3.4 Underwriting Agreement. The Company shall enter into an underwriting agreement with the managing underwriter(s), if any, selected by any Holders whose Registrable Securities are being registered pursuant to this Section 5, which managing underwriter shall be reasonably acceptable to the Company. Such agreement shall be reasonably satisfactory in form and substance to the Company, each Holder and such managing underwriters, and shall contain such representations, warranties and covenants by the Company and such other terms as are customarily contained in agreements of that type used by the managing underwriter. The Holders shall be parties to any underwriting agreement relating to an underwritten sale of their Registrable Securities and may, at their option, require that any or all the representations, warranties and covenants of the Company to or for the benefit of such underwriters shall also be made to and for the benefit of such Holders. Such Holders shall not be required to make any representations or warranties to or agreements with the Company or the underwriters except as they may relate to such Holders and their intended methods of distribution. Such Holders, however, shall agree to such covenants and indemnification and contribution obligations for selling stockholders as are customarily contained in agreements of that type used by the managing underwriter. Further, such Holders shall execute appropriate custody agreements and otherwise cooperate fully in the preparation of the registration statement and other documents relating to any offering in which they include securities pursuant to this Section 5. Each Holder shall also furnish to the Company such information regarding itself, the Registrable Securities held by it, and the intended method of disposition of such securities as shall be reasonably required to effect the registration of the Registrable Securities.

5.3.5 Rule 144 Sale. Notwithstanding anything contained in this Section 5 to the contrary, the Company shall have no obligation pursuant to Sections 5.1 or 5.2 to use its best efforts to obtain the registration of Registrable Securities held by any Holder (i) where such Holder would then be entitled to sell under Rule 144 within any three-month period (or such other period prescribed under Rule 144 as may be provided by amendment thereof) all of the Registrable Securities then held by such Holder, and (ii) where the number of Registrable Securities held by such Holder is within the volume limitations under paragraph (e) of Rule 144 (calculated as if such Holder were an affiliate within the meaning of Rule 144).

5.3.6 Supplemental Prospectus. Each Holder agrees, that upon receipt of any notice from the Company of the happening of any event as a result of which the prospectus included in the registration statement, as then in effect, includes an untrue statement of a material fact or omits to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading in light of the circumstances then existing, such Holder will immediately discontinue disposition of Registrable Securities pursuant to the registration statement covering such Registrable Securities until such Holder's receipt of the copies of a supplemental or amended prospectus, and, if so desired by the Company, such Holder shall deliver to the Company (at the expense of the Company) or destroy (and deliver to the Company a certificate of such destruction) all copies, other than permanent file copies then in such Holder's possession, of the prospectus covering such Registrable Securities current at the time of receipt of such notice.

6. **Adjustments.**

6.1 Adjustments to Exercise Price and Number of Securities. The Exercise Price and the number of Units underlying the Purchase Option shall be subject to adjustment from time to time as hereinafter set forth:

6.1.1 Share Dividends - Split-Ups. If after the date hereof, and subject to the provisions of Section 6.3 below, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock is increased by a share dividend payable in Common Stock or by a split-up of Common Stock or other similar event, then, on the effective date thereof, the number of shares of Common Stock underlying each of the Units purchasable hereunder shall be increased in proportion to such increase in outstanding shares. In such case, the number of shares of Common Stock, and the exercise price applicable thereto, underlying the Warrants underlying each of the Units purchasable hereunder shall be adjusted in accordance with the terms of the Warrants.

6.1.2 Aggregation of Shares. If after the date hereof, and subject to the provisions of Section 6.3, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock is decreased by a consolidation, combination or reclassification of Common Stock or other similar event, then, on the effective date thereof, the number of shares of Common Stock underlying each of the Units purchasable hereunder shall be decreased in proportion to such decrease in outstanding shares. In such case, the number of shares of Common Stock, and the exercise price applicable thereto, underlying the Warrants underlying each of the Units purchasable hereunder shall be adjusted in accordance with the terms of the Warrants.

6.1.3 Replacement of Securities upon Reorganization, etc. In case of any reclassification or reorganization of the outstanding Common Stock other than a change covered by Section 6.1.1 or 6.1.2 hereof or that solely affects the par value of such Common Stock, or in the case of any merger or consolidation of the Company with or into another corporation (other than a consolidation or merger in which the Company is the continuing corporation and that does not result in any reclassification or reorganization of the outstanding Common Stock), or in the case of any sale or conveyance to another corporation or entity of the property of the Company as an entirety or substantially as an entirety in connection with which the Company is dissolved, the Holder of this Purchase Option shall have the right thereafter (until the expiration of the right of exercise of this Purchase Option) to receive upon the exercise hereof, for the same aggregate Exercise Price payable hereunder immediately prior to such event, the kind and amount of shares or other securities or property (including cash) receivable upon such reclassification, reorganization, merger or consolidation, or upon a dissolution following any such sale or transfer, by a Holder of the number of shares of Common Stock of the Company obtainable upon exercise of this Purchase Option and the underlying Rights and Warrants immediately prior to such event; and if any reclassification also results in a change in Common Stock covered by Section 6.1.1 or 6.1.2, then such adjustment shall be made pursuant to Sections 6.1.1, 6.1.2 and this Section 6.1.3. The provisions of this Section 6.1.3 shall similarly apply to successive reclassifications, reorganizations, mergers or consolidations, sales or other transfers.

6.1.4 Changes in Form of Purchase Option. This form of Purchase Option need not be changed because of any change pursuant to this Section, and Purchase Options issued after such change may state the same Exercise Price and the same number of Units as are stated in the Purchase Options initially issued pursuant to this Agreement. The acceptance by any Holder of the issuance of new Purchase Options reflecting a required or permissive change shall not be deemed to waive any rights to an adjustment occurring after the Commencement Date or the computation thereof.

6.2 Substitute Purchase Option. In case of any consolidation of the Company with, or merger of the Company with, or merger of the Company into, another corporation (other than a consolidation or merger which does not result in any reclassification or change of the outstanding Common Stock), the corporation formed by such consolidation or merger shall execute and deliver to the Holder a supplemental Purchase Option providing that the holder of each Purchase Option then outstanding or to be outstanding shall have the right thereafter (until the stated expiration of such Purchase Option) to receive, upon exercise of such Purchase Option, the kind and amount of shares and other securities and property receivable upon such consolidation or merger, by a holder of the number of shares of Common Stock of the Company for which such Purchase Option might have been exercised immediately prior to such consolidation, merger, sale or transfer. Such supplemental Purchase Option shall provide for adjustments which shall be identical to the adjustments provided in Section 6. The above provision of this Section shall similarly apply to successive consolidations or mergers.

6.3 Elimination of Fractional Interests. The Company shall not be required to issue certificates representing fractions of shares of Common Stock or Rights or Warrants upon the exercise of the Purchase Option, nor shall it be required to issue scrip or pay cash in lieu of any fractional interests, it being the intent of the parties that all fractional interests shall be eliminated by rounding any fraction up or down to the nearest whole number of Warrants, Rights or shares of Common Stock or other securities, properties or rights (or as otherwise provided pursuant to the Warrants Agreement and Rights Agreement, as the case may be).

7. **Reservation and Listing**. The Company shall at all times reserve and keep available out of its authorized but unissued Common Stock, solely for the purpose of issuance upon exercise of the Purchase Options or the Rights and Warrants underlying the Purchase Option, such number of shares of Common Stock or other securities, properties or rights as shall be issuable upon the exercise thereof. The Company covenants and agrees that, upon exercise of the Purchase Options and payment of the Exercise Price therefor, all shares of Common Stock and other securities issuable upon such exercise shall be duly and validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable and not subject to preemptive rights of any stockholder. The Company further covenants and agrees that upon exercise of the Warrants underlying the Purchase Options and payment of the respective Warrant exercise price therefor, all shares of Common Stock and other securities issuable upon such exercise shall be duly and validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable and not subject to preemptive rights of any stockholder. As long as the Purchase Options shall be outstanding, the Company shall use its best efforts to cause all (i) Units and Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Purchase Options (including the Common Stock underlying the Rights), (ii) Warrants issuable upon exercise of the Purchase Options, (iii) Common Stock issuable upon conversion of the Rights included in the Units issuable upon exercise of the Purchase Option and (iv) Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants included in the Units issuable upon exercise of the Purchase Option to be listed (subject to official notice of issuance) on all securities exchanges (or, if applicable on the OTC Bulletin Board or any successor trading market) on which the Units, the Common Stock or the Public Warrants issued to the public in connection herewith may then be listed and/or quoted.

8. **Certain Notice Requirements.**

8.1 **Holder's Right to Receive Notice.** Nothing herein shall be construed as conferring upon the Holders the right to vote or consent as a stockholder for the election of directors or any other matter, or as having any rights whatsoever as a stockholder of the Company. If, however, at any time prior to the expiration of the Purchase Options and their exercise, any of the events described in Section 8.2 shall occur, then, in one or more of said events, the Company shall give written notice of such event at least fifteen days prior to the date fixed as a record date or the date of closing the transfer books for the determination of the stockholders entitled to such dividend, distribution, conversion or exchange of securities or subscription rights, or entitled to vote on such proposed dissolution, liquidation, winding up or sale. Such notice shall specify such record date or the date of the closing of the transfer books, as the case may be. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company shall deliver to each Holder a copy of each notice given to the other stockholders of the Company at the same time and in the same manner that such notice is given to the stockholders.

8.2 **Events Requiring Notice.** The Company shall be required to give the notice described in this Section 8 upon one or more of the following events: (i) if the Company shall take a record of the holders of its Common Stock for the purpose of entitling them to receive a dividend or distribution payable otherwise than in cash, or a cash dividend or distribution payable otherwise than out of retained earnings, as indicated by the accounting treatment of such dividend or distribution on the books of the Company, or (ii) the Company shall offer to all the holders of its Common Stock any additional shares of the Company or securities convertible into or exchangeable for shares of the Company, or any option, right or warrant to subscribe therefor, or (iii) a dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the Company (other than in connection with a consolidation or merger) or a sale of all or substantially all of its property, assets and business shall be proposed.

8.3 **Notice of Change in Exercise Price.** The Company shall, promptly after an event requiring a change in the Exercise Price pursuant to Section 6 hereof, send notice to the Holders of such event and change ("**Price Notice**"). The Price Notice shall describe the event causing the change and the method of calculating same and shall be certified as being true and accurate by the Company's President and Chief Financial Officer.

8.4 **Transmittal of Notices.** All notices, requests, consents and other communications under this Purchase Option shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly made when hand delivered, or mailed by express mail or private courier service: (i) if to the registered Holder of the Purchase Option, to the address of such Holder as shown on the books of the Company, or (ii) if to the Company, to the following address or to such other address as the Company may designate by notice to the Holders:

Black Ridge Acquisition Corp.
110 North 5th Street
Suite 410
Minneapolis, MN 55403
Attn: Ken DeCubellis, Chief Executive Officer
Email: _____

9. **Miscellaneous.**

9.1 **Amendments.** The Company and EBC may from time to time supplement or amend this Purchase Option without the approval of any of the Holders in order to cure any ambiguity, to correct or supplement any provision contained herein that may be defective or inconsistent with any other provisions herein, or to make any other provisions in regard to matters or questions arising hereunder that the Company and EBC may deem necessary or desirable and that the Company and EBC deem shall not adversely affect the interest of the Holders. All other modifications or amendments shall require the written consent of and be signed by the party against whom enforcement of the modification or amendment is sought.

9.2 **Headings.** The headings contained herein are for the sole purpose of convenience of reference, and shall not in any way limit or affect the meaning or interpretation of any of the terms or provisions of this Purchase Option.

9.3 Entire Agreement. This Purchase Option (together with the other agreements and documents being delivered pursuant to or in connection with this Purchase Option) constitutes the entire agreement of the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes all prior agreements and understandings of the parties, oral and written, with respect to the subject matter hereof.

9.4 Binding Effect. This Purchase Option shall inure solely to the benefit of and shall be binding upon, the Holder and the Company and their permitted assignees, respective successors, legal representative and assigns, and no other person shall have or be construed to have any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under or in respect of or by virtue of this Purchase Option or any provisions herein contained.

9.5 Governing Law; Submission to Jurisdiction. This Purchase Option shall be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to conflict of laws. The Company hereby agrees that any action, proceeding or claim against it arising out of, or relating in any way to this Purchase Option shall be brought and enforced in the courts of the State of New York or of the United States of America for the Southern District of New York and irrevocably submits to such jurisdiction, which jurisdiction shall be exclusive. The Company hereby waives any objection to such exclusive jurisdiction and that such courts represent an inconvenient forum. Any process or summons to be served upon the Company may be served by transmitting a copy thereof by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, postage prepaid, addressed to it at the address set forth in Section 8 hereof. Such mailing shall be deemed personal service and shall be legal and binding upon the Company in any action, proceeding or claim. The Company and the Holder agree that the prevailing party(ies) in any such action shall be entitled to recover from the other party(ies) all of its reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses relating to such action or proceeding and/or incurred in connection with the preparation therefor.

9.6 Waiver, Etc. The failure of the Company or the Holder to at any time enforce any of the provisions of this Purchase Option shall not be deemed or construed to be a waiver of any such provision, nor to in any way affect the validity of this Purchase Option or any provision hereof or the right of the Company or any Holder to thereafter enforce each and every provision of this Purchase Option. No waiver of any breach, non-compliance or non-fulfillment of any of the provisions of this Purchase Option shall be effective unless set forth in a written instrument executed by the party or parties against whom or which enforcement of such waiver is sought; and no waiver of any such breach, non-compliance or non-fulfillment shall be construed or deemed to be a waiver of any other or subsequent breach or non-compliance.

9.7 Execution in Counterparts. This Purchase Option may be executed in one or more counterparts, and by the different parties hereto in separate counterparts, each of which shall be deemed to be an original, but all of which taken together shall constitute one and the same agreement, and shall become effective when one or more counterparts has been signed by each of the parties hereto and delivered to each of the other parties hereto.

9.8 Exchange Agreement. As a condition of the Holder's receipt and acceptance of this Purchase Option, Holder agrees that, at any time prior to the complete exercise of this Purchase Option by Holder, if the Company and EBC enter into an agreement ("Exchange Agreement") pursuant to which they agree that all outstanding Purchase Options will be exchanged for securities or cash or a combination of both, then Holder shall agree to such exchange and become a party to the Exchange Agreement.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this Purchase Option to be signed by its duly authorized officer as of the ____ day of _____, 2017.

BLACK RIDGE ACQUISITION CORP.

By: _____
Name:
Title:

Form to be used to exercise Purchase Option:

Black Ridge Acquisition Corp.
110 North 5th Street
Suite 410
Minneapolis, MN 55403
Attn: Ken DeCubellis

Date: _____, 20__

The undersigned hereby elects irrevocably to exercise all or a portion of the within Purchase Option and to purchase ____ Units of Black Ridge Acquisition Corp. and hereby makes payment of \$ _____ (at the rate of \$11.50 per Unit) in payment of the Exercise Price pursuant thereto. Please issue the securities as to which this Purchase Option is exercised in accordance with the instructions given below.

or

The undersigned hereby elects irrevocably to convert its right to purchase _____ Units purchasable under the within Purchase Option by surrender of the unexercised portion of the attached Purchase Option (with a "Value" based of \$ _____ based on a "Market Price" of \$ _____). Please issue the securities comprising the Units as to which this Purchase Option is exercised in accordance with the instructions given below.

NOTICE: The signature to this assignment must correspond with the name as written upon the face of the purchase option in every particular, without alteration or enlargement or any change whatever.

Signature(s) Guaranteed:

THE SIGNATURE(S) SHOULD BE GUARANTEED BY AN ELIGIBLE GUARANTOR INSTITUTION (BANKS, STOCKBROKERS, SAVINGS AND LOAN ASSOCIATIONS AND CREDIT UNIONS WITH MEMBERSHIP IN AN APPROVED SIGNATURE GUARANTEE MEDALLION PROGRAM, PURSUANT TO S.E.C. RULE 17Ad-15).

INSTRUCTIONS FOR REGISTRATION OF SECURITIES

Name

(Print in Block Letters)

Address

Form to be used to assign Purchase Option:

ASSIGNMENT

(To be executed by the registered Holder to effect a transfer of the within Purchase Option):

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, _____ does hereby sell, assign and transfer
unto _____ the right to purchase _____ Units of Black Ridge Acquisition Corp.
("Company") evidenced by the within Purchase Option and does hereby authorize the Company to transfer such right on the books of the
Company.

Dated: _____, 20__

Signature

NOTICE: The signature to this assignment must correspond with the
name as written upon the face of the purchase option in every
particular, without alteration or enlargement or any change whatever.

Signature(s) Guaranteed:

THE SIGNATURE(S) SHOULD BE GUARANTEED BY AN ELIGIBLE GUARANTOR INSTITUTION (BANKS,
STOCKBROKERS, SAVINGS AND LOAN ASSOCIATIONS AND CREDIT UNIONS WITH MEMBERSHIP IN AN APPROVED
SIGNATURE GUARANTEE MEDALLION PROGRAM, PURSUANT TO S.E.C. RULE 17Ad-15).

INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM'S CONSENT

We consent to the inclusion in this Registration Statement of Black Ridge Acquisition Corp. (the "Company") on Amendment No. 2 to Form S-1, File No. 333-220516, of our report dated June 9, 2017, which includes an explanatory paragraph as to the Company's ability to continue as a going concern, with respect to our audit of the financial statements of Black Ridge Acquisition Corp. as of May 31, 2017 and for the period from May 9, 2017 (inception) through May 31, 2017, which report appears in the Prospectus, which is part of this Registration Statement. We also consent to the reference to our Firm under the heading "Experts" in such Prospectus.

/s/ Marcum llp

Marcum llp
New York, NY
September 27, 2017

Graubard Miller

The Chrysler Building
405 Lexington Avenue
New York, N.Y. 10174-1101
(212) 818-8800

facsimile
(212) 818-8881

direct dial number
(212) 818-8638
email address
jgallant@graubard.com

September 27, 2017

Larry Spigel
Assistant Director
AD Office 11 - Telecommunications
Securities and Exchange Commission
100 F Street, N.E.
Washington, D.C. 20549

Re: Black Ridge Acquisition Corporation
Registration Statement on Form S-1
Filed on September 18, 2017
File No. 333-220516

Dear Mr. Spigel:

On behalf of Black Ridge Acquisition Corp. ("Company"), we respond as follows to the Staff's comment letter, dated September 26, 2017, relating to the above-captioned Registration Statement on Form S-1 ("Registration Statement"). Captions and page references herein correspond to those set forth in Amendment No. 2 to the Registration Statement, a copy of which has been marked with the changes from the initial filing of the Registration Statement.

Please note that for the Staff's convenience, we have recited each of the Staff's comments and provided the Company's response to each comment immediately thereafter.

Potential Conflicts, page 3

1. ***Please revise your disclosures in paragraph one to clarify that your sponsor Black Ridge Oil & Gas is currently conducting a rights offering to raise money to fund its sponsorship of the Company and potentially to fund its independent acquisition of distressed assets in the energy industry.***

We have revised the disclosure on pages 3,19 and 57 of the Registration Statement as requested to clarify that the Company's sponsor will have access to the excess funds it raised in its rights offering to potentially fund additional investments or acquisitions.

Securities and Exchange Commission
September 27, 2017
Page 2

Because of our structure, other companies may have a competitive advantage and we may not be able to consummate an attractive business combination, page 21

2. ***Please revise to briefly discuss the fact that you may likewise be subject to competition for acquisitions from your sponsor, Black Ridge Oil & Gas.***

We have revised the disclosure on page 21 of the Registration Statement as requested.

If you have any questions, please do not hesitate to contact me at the above telephone and facsimile numbers.

Sincerely,

/s/ Jeffrey M. Gallant

Jeffrey M. Gallant

cc: Mr. Ken DeCubellis
